





Name	•
School	•
Grade	•
Class	•

Teacher's name:



- read and understand the use of pronouns in texts.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- listen for specific details.
- ask for further details in conversations.
- guess the meaning of words from context,
- understand and use the present simple passive.
- write a simple biography using sequencing words.
- understand the moral of a story.

#### **Objectives**

Vocabulary	Words related to exploring: ambitious, avalanche, base camp, navigate, fascinated by, sailors, astronomy, navigator, peninsula, break a record, hold a record, banker, crutch, motorbike, fins, hold (your) breath, inspire, follow (your) dreams Words related to space exploration: attached, course, marathon, mission, model, spaceship, spacesuit, cleaning wipe
Language	Phrasal verbs: I had to fill in a form. / The taxi dropped us off at the airport.
Language	Present simple passive: Their sleeping bags are attached to the walls.
Reading	A website; a blog; factual articles; a traditional story with a moral
Writing	Using sequencers to organize ideas in a biography
Speaking	Asking for further information
Listening	A radio interview
Life skills	Resilience: the determination of explorers in achieving their goals
Values	Appreciation of science and nature
Issues and challenges	Environmental responsibility
Integrated cross- curriculum topics	History: the first Arab seaman

### Contents

I le street dell'agri	
Part Theme 3: My society	-
Unit (5) Go explore!	3
Unit (5) Test (1)	54
Unit (6) Breaking news!	57
Unit (6) Test (2)	104
Review (3)	107
Review Test (3)	107
Theme 4: I'm a responsible person	
Unit (7) Making a new world	110
Unit (7) Test (4)	155
Unit (8) I can do it!	158
Unit (8) Test (5)	198
Review (4)	201
Review Test (6)	201
Part The Non-fiction Reader: The Silk Road	204
The Non-fiction Reader:  Transportation Today	212
The Fiction Reader: Patrolin hadonal   Dorlos	218
90010	
Listening Scripts	230

Part 3

**Listening Scripts** 

239

### Lesson 1

### Ahmad Ibn Majid

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





navigate يتنقل في - يُبحِر



navigator / ملاح - زبان



seaman / بَحّار - ملاح



sailor ہِحّار



Arabian Peninsula / شبه الجزيرة العربية



astronomy / الفلك - علم الفلك



was fascinated by compass رُ كان مغرمًا بـ



بوصلة

	Extra Vocabulary	كلمات إضافية	
studies	دراسات	intelligent	ذكىي
explore	يستكشف	important	മിറ്റ - റക്ര
explorer	مستكشف	languages	لغات
traveler	مسافر	route	طريق - مسار
seas	بِحار	information	معلومات
oceans	محيطات	type	نمط - نوع
poems	قصائد شعرية	master	رئيسي - أساسي

#### Lesson

winds	الآا	improve	ؙؽؙڂڛؚڹ
monsoons	رياح موسمية - أمطار موسمية	design (n)	تصميم
stars	نجوم	reliable	موثوق به - جدير بالثقة
planets	كواكب	one side	جانب واحد
known (adj)	معروف - مشهور	safely	بأمان
famous	مشهور	humans	البشر - الإنسان

### Prepositions

except for	ما عدا - باستثناء	at the age of	<u>ئى</u> غۇر
interested in	معتم د - مغرم د	at night	في الليل
with Ibn Majid's help		He went on his first journey.	
	بمساعدة ابن ماجد	בעום.	قام بأولى ر

### Sentences & Expressions

He was born in 1432.	ۇلد عام 1432.	over the years	بمرور السنين
their own ships	شفنهم الخاصة	for hundreds of years	لمئات السنين
across the world	حول العالم	sailed the Red Sea	أبحرا عبر البحر الأحمر
helped sailors to find th ان يعرفوا مسارهم	neir way ساعد البحارة علم	Indian Ocean	المحيط الهندي
a piece of land	قطعة من الأرض	East Africa	شرق أفريقيا

### Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

navigator	: a person who can find their way at sea		
astronomy	: the study of everything in space - the planets and the stars		
sailors	: people who work on a ship or boat		
peninsula	a piece of land with sea all around it, except for one side		
fascinated	: very interested in		
navigate	: to find your way at sea		
explore	<ul> <li>to try to find out things, and ask questions, even when we already have everything we need</li> </ul>		

### **Conjugation of verbs**

Regular verbs قفعال منتظمة

Pres	sent	Past	PP
sail	יובן	sailed	sailed
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
listen	يستمع	listened	listened
want	يريد - ڀرغب	wanted	wanted
help	يساعد	helped	helped
work better	تعمل بشكل أفضل	worked better	worked better
live	يعيش	lived	lived
love	يحب	loved	loved
like	يحب	liked	liked
describe	يصف	described	described
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
improve	يُحَسِن	improved	improved
navigate	يتنقل في - يُبحِر	navigated	navigated
study	يَدرس	studied	studied
refer	يشير	referred	referred

أفعال غير منتظمة arregular verbs

	Present	Past	PP
hear	تسمع	heard	heard
have	طلته - حمثلك	had	had
find	يجد	found	found
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made
mean	يعني	meant	meant

<b>ess</b>	on	1

Present		Past	PP
get older	یکبُر	got older	got older
think	تعيود	thought	thought
know	يعرف	knew	known
bear	تلِد	bore	born
go	يذهب	went	gone
become	يصبح	became	become
see	വു	saw	seen
write	يكتب	wrote	written

### Did you know?

### مل تعلم؟

Humans have always explored. Exploring means to try to find out things, and ask questions, even when we already have everything we need! الطالمـا اهتـم النشـر بالاستكشـاف. الاستكشـاف يعنـب محاولـة اكتشـاف الأشـياء وطـرح الأسئلة، حتى عندما يكون لدينا كل ما نحتاجه بالفعـل!





### Famous navigators



#### **Ahmad Ibn Majid**

Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid? He is the person who made it easier for us to travel on 0 the sea today. Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman @, and he learned how to navigate 6 the seas. "Navigate" means "to find your way around".

Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago.

He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman.



🕕 نسافر فی - نسافر عبر

🛂 بخار

😉 پُبدر

As a child, he was fascinated by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great sailors they also had their own ships. Before Ibn Majid was born, his dad and grandfather sailed the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean. Ibn Majid wanted to explore the seas and oceans, too. At the young age of seven, he went on his first journey on the sea.

Ibn Majid was a very intelligent on man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and astronomy on. Astronomy was important because the stars at night helped sailors to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the winds, the monsoons on, and the stars in the sky.

As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master navigator . He used a compass , but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use.

🚯 مفتون بـ - مُوْلَع بـ

الإبحار 😉

الحّارة 🕝

🕜 أبحرا في - أبحرا عبر

🔞 ىستكشف

و رحلة

ش ذكس

طلقاا ملد 🛈

الرياح الموسمية -الأمطار الموسمية

🔁 ملّاح

🛂 بوصلة

🗗 طۇر - خشن

😈 موثوق

😈 طُرُق - مسارات

🕒 شبه الجزيرة العربية

😉 شرق أفريقيا

🐠 قصائد



Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India, East Africa , and other places. He even wrote poems !

Across the world, Ahmad Ibn Majid is still famous. His books have helped many sailors for hundreds of years. With Ibn Majid's help, we can all travel safely on the seas.

### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### sailors - navigate - fascinated - ships - seaman

Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was 
by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great 
They also had their own ships. Ibn Majid was the first Arab 
the seas.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### journey - Ocean - navigator - explore - sailed

Before Ibn Majid was born, his dad and grandfather 
the Red Sea and the Indian 
the seas and oceans, too. At the young age of seven, he went on his first 
on the sea.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### compass - travel - astronomy - describing - born

Teacher: Hello, Norhan. Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid?

Norhan: No, teacher. Who's he?

Teacher: He is the person who made it easier for us to 0

on the sea today.

Norhan: When was he ?

Teacher: He was born in 1432 in what is now Oman.

Unit 5

Norhan: What were his studies?

Teacher: He studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned

about math, geography, and 69

Norhan: Did he write any books?

Teacher: Yes, he did. Ibn Majid wrote 38 books @

what he knew.

Norhan: What a great man!

### Read the following text and answer the questions:

Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. He was the first Arab <u>seaman</u>, and he learned how to navigate the seas. As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master navigator. He used a compass, but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use. Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India, East Africa, and other places. He even wrote poems!

### A Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The underlined word "seaman" means (explorer inventor navigator).
- Ibn Majid learned how to (navigate swim surf) the seas.
- 3. Ibn Majid improved the design of the (ships compass boats).
- B Answer these questions:
  - 4. How many books did Ibn Majid write?
  - 5. How were Ibn Majid's books helpful?



- 1. travelers he did How help sea?

  2. the Ibn Majid seaman Arab first was.

  3. important astronomy was Why?

  4. navigate to how He the seas learned.

  5. of What type books write he did?

  6. to wanted explore Ibn Majid and oceans the seas.

  7. like to Would you a sailor be?
- Write a short story of (70) words using the following guiding elements:
- O Imagine a story about one of Ibn Majid's sea journeys in the past.

start - big ship - sailors - India - compass - find - lost ship - helped - route



### Lesson 2 Language

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



### Phrasal Verbs



**fill in** , یملأ - یُکمِل



wake up پستیقظ ,



pick up یکتسب - یتعلم



**see off** پيُوڏع



figure out فیکتشف - یعرف



put away منطع الشيء في مكانه



look up ریبحث عن (معلومة)



drop off پوصل شخص لمکان

	Extra Vocabulary	الما الغافيا	
log in	يسجل الدحول إلى	helpful	متعاون
upload	يرفع على شبكة الإنترنت	organized (adj)	منظّم
download	يُحمِّل من علم شبكة الإنترنت	cool	لطيف - جميل
online	عبر الإنترنت	crowded	مزدحم
form (n)	استمارة	luckily	لحسن الحظ
staff	طاقم عمل	adventure	مغامرة

disability	إعاقة	flight	رحلة جوية
wheelchair	كرسي للمقعدين (متحرك)	airport	מطار
hiking shoes	حذاء المشي لمسافات طويلا	land (v)	يهبط على الأرض
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	golden eagles	نسور ذهبية
phrases	عبارات	bears	دننو
places	أماكن	wildcats	قطط برية
bushand	ngi	wolves	ذئاب

Ludhenarine.			
decide to	يقرر أن	on the internet	على الإنترنت
around the world	حول العالم	in June	فٰ شهر یونیو
go on a walking trip	يذهب في رحلة مشي	far away	بعيدًا
famous for	مشهور بـ	find out	يكتشف - يعرف
take out	يُخرج	at the front	في المقدمة

as many countries	as possible أكبر عدد ممكن من البلد	we got a bus to	استقللنا حافلة إلى
I was so excited!		that wasn't a problem	- لم تكن تلك مشكلة
we had to be	كان علينا أن نكون	fly home	يطير عاثدًا للوطن
Picos de Europa na وبا الوطنية	ational park محمية بيكوس دي يورا	I felt a bit sad.	شعرت ببعض الحزن.

Sentences & Expressions

### Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

fill in: to complete

wake up : to stop sleeping

pick up : to learn

see off : to say goodbye to somebody leaving

figure out : to discover

put away: to put something in its place

look up : to find out something

to take somebody to a place

riad: a special house in Morocco

### An additional piece of information معلومه إظافيه

riad: The term riad comes from the Arabic term for "gardens".

Riad (ريـاض) is the plural of rawda (روضـة). A riad is a traditional Moroccan house or palace with an indoor garden and courtyard.

Riads were the expensive villas of the wealthiest families.

رياض هي جمع كلمة روضة والني تعني حديمة باللغة العربية. والرياض هو ميرل أو قصر معربين قديم ذو حديمة داخلية وقياء. وكانت الرياض مني ومن ما بمثانة قلل غالية الثمن تسكنها العائلات الثرية.

### Conjugation of works

Regular verbs قمعال منتظمة

	A STATE OF THE STA	- Jan 1	
fill in	يملاً - يُكمِل	filled in	filled in
pick up	يكتسب - يتعلم	picked up	picked up
discover	يكتشف	discovered	discovered
look up	يبحث عن (معلومة)	looked up	looked up
park	يركن (السيارة)	parked	parked

- 6		ĸ.
-	v	,
-	e	

	mmi <u>l</u>	Trible 1	
stay	يمكث - يبقى	stayed	stayed
visit	يزور	visited	visited
land	يهبط على الأرض	landed	landed
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
figure out	يكتشف - يعرف	figured out	figured out
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
use	یستخدم - یستعمل	used	used
complete	يُكمِل	completed	completed
delete	یزیل - یمحو	deleted	deleted
create	ينشئ - يىتكر	created	created
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
stop	يوقف - يتوقف	stopped	stopped
drop off	يوصل شخص لمكان	dropped off	dropped off

#### 

put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	put away	put away
read	يقرأ	read	read
have to	يجب أن - لا بُد	had to	had to
tell	يخبر	told	told
leave	يغادر	left	left
feel	یشعر - یحس	felt	felt
get	يحصل علم	got	got (gotten)
teach	يُدَرِس	taught	taught

#### Unit 5

	-	A COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY	
say	يقول	said	said
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
see off	يودع	saw off	seen off
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
take out	يُخرِج	took out	taken out
swim	تسند - تعوم	swam	swum
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
fly	يطير	flew	flown



#### Blog

Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"!

I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair **0**, so we had to be very organized **2**, but that wasn't a problem.

We filled in the forms 6 to tell the train and plane staff about my disability 0, and everybody was very helpful. I looked up 6 the best places to visit on the internet before we left.

My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom woke me up 6 early so I could swim every day

my mom woke me up @ early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I picked up @ a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi dropped us off @ at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!



1, 31 (1

1,010 110

- 🚺 کرسڀ متحرك
- 😢 مُنْطُمِين مُرَثِّبيں
- 📵 ملأنا الاستمارات
  - 🚯 إعامَة عجر
    - 🗗 بحثث عن
    - القطتس 🕝
- 🕜 تعلّمتُ -التقطت
  - 🔞 أوضلنا أنزَلنا

#### Blog

Bresex IIIs

Lestrar

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I went on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom saw us off **0** at the airport. When we landed @, we got a bus to the Picos de Europa national park. It's very beautiful, and it was quite easy to walk.



We went in June, when it wasn't too hot. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I figured the answer out 6 by looking online - they were golden eagles 4. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears of and wildcats of Luckily, they were far away! The park is famous for its wolves , but sadly, we didn't see any. It was a great trip, and I was sad to put my hiking shoes away 3!

- 🕕 ودعتنا قامت بتودیعنا
  - 🛂 هبطت طائرتیا
  - اكتشفتُ الإجابة عرفث الإجابة
    - السور
    - 🗗 دتنة
    - 🜀 مُطَطَ بريّة
      - دئاں
- 😉 وضعتُ حذاء المشي لمسافات طويلة في مكانه

### Activity Book Text

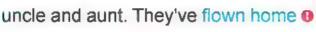
I'm really tired.

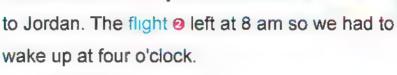
### At the airport

Fares: Hello, Samir. Where have you been?



Samir: We've been to the airport to see off my







🕦 عاد للوطن بالطائرة

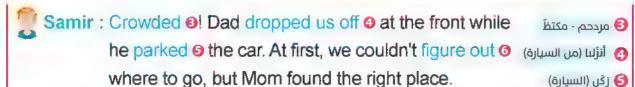




Fares: Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it like?



#### Unit 5



Fares : Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and I will need passports. Mom will fill in the forms ❷ for us. 

Solution (1) Fares : Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and I will need passports. Mom will will a fill in the forms ❷ for us.

Samir: Wow! You'll pick up 6 some cool American phrases while vou're there.

# Grammar Study 📆



A phrasal verb is a verb that is followed by a preposition. The preposition changes the meaning of the verb.

الفعل الاصطلاحي هو الفعل المتبوع بحرف جر والذي يتغير معناه بتغير حرف الجر الذي يليه.

### **Examples:**

- She saw the picture in the book. (see = notice with your eyes)
- She saw off her husband before he traveled. (see off = say goodbye)
- When phrasal verbs have an object, this affects the word order.
  عند وجود مفعول في الجملة التي بها فعل اصطلاحي فإن ذلك يؤثر على ترتيب الجملة.

### Examples:

I filled the form in before I left. (the form is the object)

#### You can also say:

O I filled in the form before I left.

لاحظ أنه إذا كان المفعول اسمًا فإنه يجوز أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر، ويجوز أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر، وكلاهما صحيح.

### When the object is a pronoun, we follow this word order:

الجر. الجر. ولا يجوز أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر، ولا يجوز أن يأتي بعد حرف الجر.

### Example:

O I filled it in before I left. ("it" is the object; it is a pronoun)

NOT I filled in it before I left.

### Exercises on Leason

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### filled - organized - looked - decided - disability

Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I • to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"! I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very • , but that wasn't a problem.

We in the forms to tell the train and plane staff about my disability, and everybody was very helpful. I up the best places to visit on the internet before we left.

### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### dropped - loved - stayed - picked - woke

When I was in Morocco, my favorite place was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We 
at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom 
me up early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so 
up a lot of French phrases while I was there. When 
the taxi 
us off at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is 
a wonderful place!



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### put - went - figured - knew - saw

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom of us off at the airport. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I the answer out by looking online – they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! The park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to of the my hiking shoes away!

### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### parked - place - flight - passports - airport

Fares: Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

Samir: We've been to the 
to see off my uncle and aunt.

They've flown home to Jordan. The 
left at 8 am, so
we had to wake up at four o'clock. I'm really tired.

Fares: Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it like?

Samir: Crowded! Dad dropped us off at the front while he so the car. At first, we couldn't figure out where to go, but Mom found the right place.

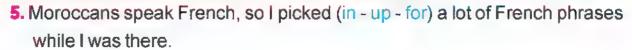
Fares: Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and

I will need 
. Mom will fill in the forms for us.

Samir: You'll pick up some cool American phrases while you're there.

## Choose the correct answer: (Phrasal verbs)

- 1. We filled (on at in) a form when we arrived at the hotel.
- 2. I looked (up out at) the best places to visit on the internet before we left.
- 3. When the taxi dropped us (of off over) at the airport, I felt a bit sad.
- 4. My mom woke me (out on up) early.



- 6. Mom saw us (for of off) at the airport.
- 7. I figured the answer (out on in) by looking online.
- 8. I was sad to put my hiking shoes (a way way away).
- 9. She saw (off him off her husband her husband of) before he traveled.
- 10. I filled (it in in it on it) before I left.
- 11. They are looking (up it the route at up the route) to the beach.
- 12. My clothes are on my bed. Mom and I are putting (away them them a way - them away).
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- 1. my sister My dad up wakes in the morning at 7 o'clock.
- 2. picked some German phrases Berlin in He up.
- 3. up looking They are route the to the beach.
- 4. Mom and putting away clothes my are I.
- Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

#### "A visit to a famous place"

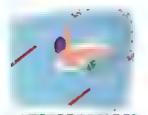
- Who went with you?
- What did you take with you?
- What was that place?
- When was the visit?
  - What did you see there?



### Lessons 3\_4 Amazing adventured & Omar Hegazy

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





athlete پاکس پیافیا بدنا



banker مصرفی - موظف بنك/



motorbike دراجة نارية



fins زعانه











break a world record یحطم الرقم القیاسی العالمی



world-record-holding athlete) ریاضی یحمل رقمًا قیاسیًا عالمیًا



hold his breath یحبس أنفاسه



follow their dreams يسعون لتحقيق أحلامهم

	Extra Vocabulary	إفاميا	
interview (n	مقابلة	rock climbing	رياضة تسلق الصخور
skills	مهارات	snorkeling للتنفس	الغوص باستخدام خرطوم
breath	نَّفُس	scuba diving کسجین	الغوص باستخدام أنبوبة أ
chest	<u> م</u> ذر	diver	غواص
keeping fit	المحافظة على اللياقة البدنية	distance	مسافة
fitness	لياقة بدنية	transportation	النقل
physical	بدبت	engine	محرك

### Adjustines & Adverbs

amazing adventures	معامرات مدهشة	unfortunately	. لسوء الحظ
amazingly	مما يثير الدهشة	disabled	يعاني من إعاقة
enough	كافٍ	incredible	ً لا يصدق
successful	ناجح	rubber things	أشياء مطاطية
a female athlete	لاعبة رياضية	talented	موهوب

### (Verbil)

achieve	motivate يُنجِز - يحقق	يَحُث - يدفع - يشجع
guide	remove يرشد	بزيل
rest (v) (n)	train hard يستريح - راحة	يتدرب بجد
canoe (v) (n)	inspire يتنقل بالزورق - زورق	( يُلهم

### Unit 5

### Places & Nature

the Amazon	منطقة الأمازون	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
the Himalayas	جبال الهيمالايا	the Aqaba Gulf	خليج العقبة
the Arctic	القطب الشمالي	oases	ا واحات
environment	بيئة	shade	ظِل
landscape	منظر طبيعي	springs	عیون ماء - ینابیع

### Prepositions

go back to	يعود إلى	listen to	يستمع إلى
go on an adventure	يذهب في معامرة	put on	يرتدي
at the age of 25	في عُمر الـ 25	put <mark>up a tent</mark>	ينصب حيمة

### Sentences & Expressions

gives talks to	يلقى محاضرات	had an accident	تعرض لحادث
do well at work	يؤدي جيدًا في عمله	He completed the swin	n in eight hours! أكمل السباحة خلال ثم
inspire others	إلهام الآخرين	during the day	أثناء النهار
He felt free.	شُعُرَ بالحرية.	along the road	على طول الطريق
that part of the wo	rld ذلك الجزء من العالم	It was too hot to sleep. ـة يصعب فيها النوم.	ِ كان الجو حارًا جدًا لدرج

### Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

	- Door -
break a world record	: to do something better than anybody else in the world
follow (your) dreams	: to do something in life that you really want to do
world-record-holding athlete	: an athlete who has broken a world record
fins	: long rubber things to put on your feet to help you swim faster
crutch	: something to put under your arm to help you walk better
inspire	: to motivate and guide others
banker	: someone who works in a bank
hold your breath	: keep your breath inside your chest without breathing out
motorbike	: a type of transportation on two wheels, with an engine

### Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs منتظمة

talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
work hard	يعمل پِجِد	worked hard	worked hard
enjoy	یستمتع ب	enjoyed	enjoyed
train	يتدرب	trained	trained
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
rest	یستریح	rested	rested
achieve	يُنجِز - يُكمِل	achieved	achieved
inspire	يُلهِم	inspired	inspired
remove	يزبل	removed	removed
move	يتحرك	moved	moved

#### Unit 5

	The land		
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled	cycled
believe	يعتقد - يؤمن	believed	believed
motivate	يدُث - يدفع	motivated	motivated
guide	يرشد	guided	guided
canoe	يتنقل بالزورق	canoed	canoed
try	يحاول - يجرب	tried	tried

### Irregular verbs

5	TELEVIE A	lette /	
set (a record	يسجل رقمًا قياسيًا (	set	set
keep fit	يحافظ علم لياقته البدنية	kept fit	kept fit
hold	یمسك - پحتفظ ډ	held	held
break	يكسر	broke	broken
do	يفعل	did	done
show	يُظهِر	showed	showed (shown)
give	شهعتا	gave	given
begin	يبدأ	began	begun



## Activity Book Text

### **Amazing Adventures!**

Emily went to the Amazon o because she wanted to learn more منطقة الأمازون about what humans are doing to the environment. She learned how to canoe 2. She also learned how to take better photos. Her biggest challenge 6 was that it was often too hot to sleep.



🗿 يُجِدُف برورق

نحدّي 😉

Tom went to the Himalayas • because he has always been interested in that part of the world. He learned how to cook outside. He also learned how to put up a tent • that was big enough for four people.

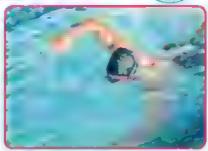


4 جبال الهيمالايا

🔓 ينصب خيمة

### Omar Hegazy

Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a world-record-holding athlete •. He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. He is very inspiring •, but his life has not always been easy.



At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. He had a good job as a banker in the Sinai Peninsula o, and he was very active. He enjoyed sports, including rock climbing o, snorkeling o, and keeping fit o.

One day, he was traveling along the road on his motorbike 69

when he had an accident. The doctors told him that.

unfortunately, they had to remove part of his leg. Omar had

Omar learned about two important athletes who are also

disabled . The first athlete is Dareen Barbar, a female

athlete from Lebanon who has only one leg. The second

person to inspire in Omar is Faisal Al-Mosawi, who is a

to learn to use a crutch o, and then a wheelchair.

لا رياصي يحمل رقمًا قياسيًا عالميًا

و مُلْجِم

쥥 موظف فى بىك

👍 شبه جریرة سیناء

舂 تسلُق الصخور

الغوص مريبًا من سطح الماء

الحفاظ على اللياقة البدبية

دراجة بخارية (نارية)

عکار 🤨

🐠 يعانون إعاقة جسدية

So, Omar began swimming. In the water, he felt free and his body moved easily. Slowly, Omar became stronger, and he trained hard. He decided that he wanted to break a world record p, too. Omar tried to see if he could hold his breath punderwater longer than anybody else.

🛈 ئلھە

لكسر رقمًا قياسيًا للله عمالة المثا

📵 يجىس أنفاسه

wheelchair diver.

Omar trained hard, and in 2022, he could swim underwater for a distance of 56.48 meters!

He then put on fins on and swam for longer – 76.7 meters! He broke world records with both these swims. Since these incredible swims, Omar has

also swum across the Aqaba Gulf . He completed the swim in eight hours! As well as this, Omar cycled from Taba in the Sinai Peninsula to the Egyptian Pyramids in Giza. He never stops!



- 🙆 رعانف
- 🗗 خليج العقبة
  - 🐠 قاد دراجة
- 😈 أشخاص ذوبي إعاقات
  - السعون لتحقيق أحلامهم

Today, Omar Hegazy is a very happy man, and gives talks to inspire others. He wants to help other people with

disabilities & follow their dreams & and believe they can do anything.

# Activity Book Text

#### Faisal Al-Mosawi

In 2005, Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented • football player. However, after a car accident • he couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair. He was 20 years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal

years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a challenge. So, in 2009 he learned scuba diving ⑤ and he decided to become the fastest diver ⑥ in the world. In 2018, he broke the world record ⑥ and became the fastest person to scuba dive ⑥ 10 km, in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was set in ⑥ 2011 by Chrîstopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability ⑥. Today, Faisal continues to scuba dive and he inspires young people by giving talks. Faisal



- വള്ള വ
- 🙆 حادث سیارة
- 📵 العوص بجهار التنفّس
  - (غطّاس) غوّاص (غطّاس)
- و حطَّم الرقم القياسي العالمي
  - 🜀 يغوص بجهاز تنمُس
- 🕡 سُجِّل مي تحقِّق مي
  - 🔞 إعاقة عجر

wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.

## Exercises on Lessons 3 4

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### cance - world - tent - environment - challenge

Emily went to the Amazon because she wanted to learn more about what humans are doing to the 

. She learned how to

- She also learned how to take better photos. Her biggest
- was that it was often too hot to sleep.

Tom went to the Himalayas because he has always been interested in that part of the world. He learned how to cook outside. He also learned how to put up a 

that was big enough for four people.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



### (athletes - banker - leg - record - training - underwater)

At the age of 25, Omar was a • . He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to the hospital, where the doctors removed part of his • . Then, Omar heard about two disabled • , and he wanted to be like them. He started • hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world • in holding his breath . Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### motorbike - crutch - dreams - record - accident

interviewer: Hello, Omar. Can I ask you a few questions?

Omar : Hello! Of course you can. Interviewer : What was your last job?

Omar : I was a banker.

Unit 5

Interviewer: What has changed your life?

Omar : One day, I was traveling along the road on my motorbike

when I had an o ...... I had to learn to use a

, and then a wheelchair.

Interviewer: How have you become a great athlete after that terrible

accident?

Omar : I trained hard and hard. I decided that I wanted to break a

world 69 . . . . . . . . . . .

Interviewer: You are a role model, Omar. You can also inspire others.

Omar : That's my aim. I want to help other people with disabilities

anything.



### Read the following text and answer the questions:



In 2005, Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player. However, after a car accident he couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair. He was 20 years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a challenge. So, in 2009, he learned scuba diving and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was set in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability. Today, Faisal continues to scuba dive and he inspires young people by giving talks. Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented (tennis football handball) player.
- 2. In (2005 2009 2011), he learned scuba diving.
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "fastest" is (slowest weakest least).

- Answer these questions:
  - 4. What happened to Faisal after the accident?
  - 5. What does Faisal want to show the world?
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
  - 1. like best her adventure about What Emily did?
  - 2. a banker He as had job a good.
  - 3. on an adventure Would to go like you?
  - 4. a terrible his motorbike had Omar on accident.
  - 5. were What challenges the trip of the?

  - 6. to record wanted a world He break.
- Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

### "Omar's story"

active - sports - accident - wheelchair - train - broke - inspire



### Lesson 5

### Language



### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary







model spaceship spacesuit / نُموذج لسفينة فضاء ﴿



بدلة فضاء



mission مهمة



course / دورة تدريبية



attached to / مربوطة بـ



cleaning wipes / منادیل تنظیف



marathon ا سباق مسافات طویلة ا

	Extra Vocabular,	Ale a lead	
career	حياة مهنية - وظيفة	float (v)	يطفو
university	جامعة	drawers	أدراج
space trip	رحلة إلى الفضاء	weak	ضعیم
lucky	محظوظ	regularly	بانتظام

	Det 0	
Prepo		-
the latest property		-
-		

on Earth	على الأرض	throw away	یرمی بعیدًا
in case	مٰي حالة	move around	يتحرك في أنحاء المكان
at mealtimes	في أوقات الوجيات	stops the food from	(يمنع الطعام من

### Sentences & Expressions

make the trip	يقوم بالرحلة	less gravity	جاذبية أرضية أقل
an amazing experie	تجربة مُدهشة  ence	training course	دورة تدريبية
That's so cool!	هذا رائع جدًا	do experiments	يجري تجارب
a two-year astronaut course دورة لرواد الفضاء مدتها عامين		keep everything clean یحافظ علم کل شيء نظیف	
give first aid	يقدم إسعافات أولية	three lengths	ثلاثة أطوال (مسافات)
physically strong	قوي بدنيًا	if they will be well	إذا ما كانوا سيكونون بخير
get sick	يمرض	special area	منطقة خاصة

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

A 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10			
join	یلتحق ہ	joined	joined
fix	يصلح - يُثَبِّت	fixed	fixed
check	يفحص	checked	checked
float	يطفو	floated	floated
heat	يُسَدِّن	heated	heated
pack	يحزم	packed	packed
wash	يغسل	washed	washed
test	يختبر	tested	tested
ask	يطلب	asked	asked
store	يخزن	stored	stored
study	يَدرس	studied	studied

### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

1,000			4 4
put	يضع	put	put
teach	يُدَرِس - يُعَلِم	taught	taught
choose	يختاز	chose	chosen
wear	ترتدی	wore	worn
run	تخرث	ran	run
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
throw away	یرمی بعیدًا	threw away	thrown away

### Lesson Notes

- experiment
- experience

تحربة علمية تجرب<mark>ة حياتية</mark>

- ▶ At school, we sometimes do experiments in the science lab.
- ▶ I think traveling to other countries is an amazing experience.



### Read and Learn



### It's an astronaut's life

becomes sick in space.

Would you like to be an astronaut **①**? It's a great career **②**, but you need to work very hard. First of all, you should study science at school and university. After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut course **③**. If you are chosen to **②** join the next space trip **⑤**, you are very lucky!

In the training course, a new astronaut is taught of many

things by their teachers. They are taught how to fix a



- 🕕 رائد فضاء
- 2 مهية وظيفة
- 🔞 دورة تدريبية
- 🚯 تم اجتیارك اـ
- 5 رحلة للفضاء
- spaceship 🕖, and how to do experiments 🔞. The students يتم تعليمه يتعلم 🔞
- are shown how to give first aid ②, too, in case someone
  - 🛭 يقوم بإجراء تجارب
  - 🤨 يقدم إسعافات أولية

Astronauts need to be physically strong . They are regularly tested by doctors for their fitness. They are also usually asked to swim three lengths in their spacesuits in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to go into a model spaceship . There, they are checked to see if they will be well in the spaceship. If they get sick, they cannot make the trip.

When the astronauts are on their mission ®, their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags ® are attached to ® a wall so they don't float around ® when they sleep. This is because there's less gravity than on Earth. Food is put in drawers ® so it doesn't move around, too. See how the fruit is floating in the photo of the spaceship! At mealtimes ®, the food is

😈 قوي بدنيًا

🛈 بدلات مصاء

🙋 نمودج لسفيية فصاء

📵 مهمة

🚯 أكياس نوم

🗗 مربوطة فرب

😈 تطمو مُي الأنحاء

😈 أدراج

😉 أوقات الوجبات

😰 سوائل تىظيف

20 مىادىل تىظيم

🛂 سياق - ماراثون

💤 مُرَثْب - مُنْظُم

🕹 حقيبة سفر

heated up by the astronauts. The astronauts then eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from floating away.

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything clean. The team can't use cleaning liquids of for cleaning as there's less gravity, so they use cleaning wipes . There's no shower or bath in the spaceship, so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too. The astronauts sometimes wear the same clothes for a long time in the spaceship. Often, dirty clothes are then thrown away.

The team needs to keep fit in space, so their bodies don't become weak. To do this, they run in a special area of the spaceship. Did you know that one astronaut, Sunita Williams, ran the Boston Marathon while she was in space in 2007? That's so cool!

So, what do you think? Would you like an astronaut's life? Are you tidy and organized? Is your suitcase packed for space? I think we can all see that traveling into space would be an amazing experience, but is it for you?

# Grammar Study



- The passive is formed with the verb to be and the past participle of the main verb.

  - Fachers teach a new astronaut many things.
  - A new astronaut is taught many things by teachers.
    - Doctors test astronauts for their fitness.
  - Astronauts are tested by doctors for their fitness.

#### Acilyo

- In active sentences, we focus on the doer of the action (the person doing the action).
  - في صيغة المعلوم نركز على الفاعل الذي قام بالفعل ونبدأ به جملة المعلوم.
  - We study science at school and university.

#### Passiva

- In passive sentences, we focus on the object (the person/thing receiving the action).
  - الفعل) عليه المجهول نركز علم المفعول (الشخص أو الشيء الذي وقع عليه الفعل) ونبدأ به جملة المجهول.
- Astronauts are asked to swim three lengths in their spacesuits.
- The doer can be included in the sentence, using by, or it can be left out.
  - 💻 يمكن أن نذكر الفاعل في جملة المجهول مسبوقًا بحرف الجر (by) ويمكن ألا نذكره.
  - The food is heated up (by the astronauts).
- Astronauts' bags are stored on the spaceship.

## Exercises on Lesson (5

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### course - space - astronaut - trip - university

It's great to be an 

It's a great career, but you need to work very hard. First of all, you should study science at school and

After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut

If you are chosen to join the next space 

you are very lucky!

### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### sick - fitness - spaceship - spacesuits - strong

Astronauts need to be physically strong. They are regularly tested by doctors for their 

. They are also usually asked to swim three lengths in their 

in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to go into a model 

. There, they are checked to see if they will be well in the spaceship. If they get 

they cannot make the trip.

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### attached - drawers - floating - gravity - mission

When the astronauts are on their • , their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags are • to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep. This is because there's less • than on Earth. Food is put in drawers so it doesn't move around, too. The astronauts eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from • away.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. If you are (choose chose chosen) to join the next space trip, you are very lucky!
- The teachers (teaching are taught taught) astronauts how to fix a spaceship.
- 3. In the training course, a new astronaut is (teaching teach taught) many things by their teachers.
- 4. (Does Is Did) your suitcase packed for space?
- 5. When the astronauts are on their mission, their things (store are storing are stored) safely on the spaceship.
- 6. The students (show shown are shown) how to give first aid by their teachers.
- Astronauts are regularly (tested are tested test) by doctors for their fitness.
- 8. What (are have do) astronauts taught by their teachers?
- 9. How is the spaceship (clean cleaned is cleaned)?
- 10. Food (put is put are put) in drawers so it doesn't move around.
- 11. The teachers usually (ask are asked is asked) astronauts to swim three lengths in their spacesuits in a swimming pool.
- 12. Often, astronauts (ask are asked is asked) to go into a model spaceship by their teachers.
- 13. They are (checked check are checked) to see if they will be well in the spaceship.
- 14. Their sleeping bags are (attach are attached attached) to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep.
- 15. At mealtimes, the food (heated heat is heated) up by the astronauts.
- 16. Often, dirty clothes are (throw threw thrown) away.
- 17. When (is are do) clothes thrown away?



# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. things many is astronaut A new taught.
- 2. is cleaned How spaceship the?
- 3. need strong to Astronauts physically be.
- 4. packed Is space for suitcase your?
- 5. study school You should at science.
- 6. away are thrown When clothes?

# Write an email of (70) words to your friend Fares:

Tell him about a book you read about how to be an astronaut and what the astronaut's life is like. Your email address is <a href="mailto:ehab@yahoo.com">ehab@yahoo.com</a> and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:fares@gmail.com">fares@gmail.com</a>.

From:

To:

Subject

### Lesson 6 Writing: A biography

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





biography سیرة ذاتیة



ambitious (adj) طَمُوح



base camp مُخیم رئیسپ



avalanche انهیار ثلجی



achievement إنجاز



equipment معدات



earthquake زلزال - هزة أرضية



achieve her dream رُتُحَقِق حلمها

Extra Voc	abulery		
Mount Everest	جبل إيفرست	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل کلیمنجارو	describe	يصف
mountaineering guide في الجبال	دلیل (مرشد) تسلُّز	However	ومع ذلك
Kokoda Track پ دولة بابوا غينيا الجديدة)	طريق كوكودا (ف	young woman	شابة

sequencing words	كلمات التتابع	Neict	ثم
ordering events	ترتيب الأحداث	After that	بعد ذلك
First of all	أولًا - في البداية	Finally	<b>أ</b> خيرًا

# Prepositions

at the age of eight	مُى عُمر الثامنة	across deserts	عبر الصحاري
look at	ينظر إلى	arrived at	يصل إلى
went on journeys	ذهبوا في رحلات	get to	يصل إلى

### Activity Book

the South Pole	القطب الجنوبي	explorers	مستكشفون
Antarctica ببية	القارة القطبية الجنو	education	تعليم
the Atlantic Ocean	المحيط الأطلنطي	temperatures	درجات الحرارة
	جزيرة جرينلاند (تقع ب الشمالي والمحيط ا	the Sahara Desert أفريقيا)	الصحراء الكبرى (في شمال
northern Norway	شمال النرويج	charity worker	مشتغل بالأعمال الخيرية
expedition	رحلة استكشافية	inspirational speak	متحدث فلهم er
continent	قارة	snow (n)	جليد - ثلج
backpack	حقيبة ظَهر	total	إجمالي

### Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

ambitious: wanting to be successful

ta place where people climbing a mountain can rest

### For lugation of worth

Regular verbs منتظمة المعال منتظمة

Timent		PERE	
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
cross	يَعْبُر	crossed	crossed
happen	يَحدث	happened	happened
reach	يصل إلى	reached	reached
arrive at	يصل إلى	arrived at	arrived at
ski	يتزلج	skied	skied
continue	يستمر	continued	continued
describe	يصف	described	described
achieve	يُنجِز	achieved	achieved
introduce (someone)	يُقَدِّم شخص	introduced	introduced
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

### Irregular verbs Tarita Linut

	Firmum!	Past	
get to	يصل إلى	got to	got to
write	ىكتى	wrote	written
buy	يشترب	bought	bought
take	يأذذ	took	taken
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen



#### How to write a biography

- Do your research well. Look at different texts online, or in books. to find out facts about the person.
- Write a short first paragraph to introduce why the person is famous.
- Write key events in chronological (time) order. Use sequencing words.
- Write in the past tense because you are describing things which have already happened.

کیف تکتب سیرة ذاتیة

- ♦ فم بإجراء بحثك بشكل جيد. اطلع على نصوص محتلفة عبر الأبترنت أو في الكتب لتعرف حقائق عن الشخص.
  - اكنب مقرة أولى قصيره لتوصيح سب شهره هذا الشخص.
  - ♦ اكتب الأحداث الرئيسية بالنسلسل الرميمي (الوقنم). استحدم كلمات التتابع.
    - اكتب تصبعه الماصب لأبك تصف أشياء حدثت بالمعل.



### Reed and learn



### Alyssa Azar: A biography

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most ambitious adventurers 0. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest 2.

Alyssa is from Toowoomba, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering

guide 6, so he often took her on trips with him. First of all 6, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimaniaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her.



- 🕕 مغامرون طموحون
  - 🔁 جيل إيفرست
- 윌 مرشد نِسلُق جِيال
- 🐠 أولًا في البداية
  - 🗗 معدات

Alyssa trained hard, then she bought the correct equipment 6 for climbing Everest.



However, it was not very easy to climb the world's highest mountain. In 2014, and again in 2015, she got to the base camp of at Everest. Unfortunately of, there were problems. In 2014, there was an avalanche of, and in 2015, there was an earthquake of. Sadly, she couldn't continue to the top.

Finally 0, in 2016, Alyssa made it to 0 the top of Everest.

- 🜀 المعسكر الرئيسي
- 🕜 لسوء الحظ للأسف
  - 🔞 الهيار جليدي
  - 😉 هرَّة أرضية زلزال
- 🐠 مُي نهاية المطاف
- وملت (نجحت في الوصول) إلى
  - 🔑 معامرات

She was 19 years old. Alyssa has written a book about her adventures **©**, called The Girl Who Climbed Everest. In the book, she describes the hard work that helped her achieve her dream.

# Activity Book Text

### Matthieu Tordeur: A biography

Matthieu Tordeur is a world-record-holding explorer •. At the age of 27 years and 40 days, he became the youngest person to ski • to the



🕕 مُستكشِف

South Pole in Antarctica, alone, and without any help.

🛂 ينزلج

Matthieu was born in Rouen in France on 4 December, 1991.

😉 القطب الجنوبي

As a young man, Matthieu was inspired by famous explorers

👍 أبخز عبر

like Ranulph Fiennes, Ben Saunders, and Jean-Louis

💋 المحيط الأطلىطي

Étienne. After finishing his education, Matthieu went on many journeys across deserts, mountains, and snow. He cycled across Europe and China, and he sailed across 4 the Atlantic Ocean 5. Then he decided to ski to the

South Pole.

First of all, he spent two years training in Greenland and northern Norway. After that, he did six marathons across the Sahara Desert 6, one after the other, which was a total of 250 kilometers. He had to carry his food and water in



backpacks. Next, Matthieu spent months planning his route. He looked up of the information he needed and bought his equipment. He wanted to do his adventure alone and he knew that was going to be a big challenge.

🜀 الصحراء الكبرى

🕜 تخث عن

🔞 درجات الحرارة

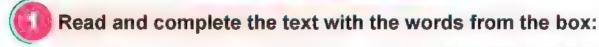
🕑 شخبَ - جُڑ

🚺 أرقام قياسية

Finally, on 13 January, 2019, Matthieu arrived at the South Pole after a journey of 51 days and a distance of 1,230 kilometers. Sometimes the temperatures @ were as low as -30°C. He skied all the way and he pulled 9 115 kg of equipment. Matthieu wrote a book about his adventures and he made a television program about it. And since then, he has broken more records , written more books, and had many more adventures.

#### Exercises on Lesson (6





adventures – ambitious – achieve – describe – climb

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to Mount Everest. When she was 14, she decided to climb 2 Mount Everest, and her parents helped her. In 2016, Alyssa made it to the top of Everest. She was 19 years old. Alyssa has written a book about , called "The Girl Who Climbed Everest". In the book. her 6 she describes the hard work that helped her her dream.



#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### mountain - trips - train- equipment - guide

Alyssa is from, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering , so he often took her on with him. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro. After that, Alyssa trained hard, then she bought the correct for climbing Everest. It was not very easy to climb the world's highest.

# ( F

#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### put - went - figured - knew - saw

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom or us off at the airport. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were.

I of the answer out by looking online — they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! The park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to of the community of the park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to of the community of the park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to of the community of the park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to of the park is famous for its wolves. It was a great trip, and I was sad to of the park is famous for its wolves.

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. Alyssa's was What job dad's?
- 2. Everest She Mount climb decided to.
- 3. when did What she was 14 do she?

- 4. woman young an is Alyssa amazing.
- 5. achievement What amazing Alyssa's was?
- Write a biography of a person who inspires you:

#### "A Biography"

#### Look at these ideas to help you.

Do some research and write some notes about the person.
 (an athlete - an inspirational speaker - a person with a disability - a charity worker - a young businessperson)

#### Remember these things:

- Use sequencing words to order your ideas: First of all, Next, Then, After that, and Finally.
- Include important dates and interesting events in the person's life.
- Write in the past tense.
- Use capital letters for people's names, cities, countries, months, etc.

### Lesson 7 Story: The travelers and the wolf

### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





realize يدرك



chat (v) / پدردش



pretend يتظاهر



whisper ىھمس



the pigeons cooed crack of a branch /هدلت الحقامات (هديل) ا



ا طقطقة (كسر) غصن ا



deer بغزال



wolf ذئب



sunrise ، شروق <mark>الشمس</mark>



palm trees / نخیل



travelers ، مسافرون



true friends أصدقاء حقيقيون

	Extra Vocabulary	train itain	
nearby town	مدینهٔ قریبهٔ	get closer	يقترب
a bit hard	صعب بعض الشيء	noise	ضوضاء
l'm sure	أنا متأكد	beautiful scene	منطر جميل
after a while	بعد مُترة	dead	میت
immediately	في الحال	so scared	حائف جدًا
from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا	a long walk	تمشية طويلة

### Prepositions

grow up	يكبر	at first	في البداية
get up	يستيقظ - ينهض	run away	يجري بعيدًا - يفر
on their backs	على ظهورهم	far away	ڶڡٙڗڎ۪ٳ
run back towards	يجري عائدًا تجاه	on his own	بمفرده
turn around	يستدير	fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض
come up to	تإين ر	in danger	في خطر
come down	ينزل	at the start of the story	في بداية القصة
look for	يىحث عن	at the end of the story	فب نهاية القصة

## Activity Book

coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	huge shark	سمكة فرش ضخمة
dark shadow	ظل داکن	come together	بتجمعوا
frightening	مخيف	cheer	يهتف - يهلل
frightened	خاثف	hug	يحضن - يحتضن
strong tail	ذیل قوی	brave	ر شجاع

### Vocabulary Study

chatting	:	talking	in	a	friendly	way	to	friends
----------	---	---------	----	---	----------	-----	----	---------

crack	: the sound a branch makes when it breaks

whisper :		to	talk	very	q	uietl	y
-----------	--	----	------	------	---	-------	---

pretend	:	to act	in a	a way	that	isn't	true
---------	---	--------	------	-------	------	-------	------

### Conjugation of author

### Regular verbs قمطنان أفعال منتظمة

Firm		Time	
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	pretended
whisper	maai	whispered	whispered
coo	تهدل (للحمام)	cooed	cooed
look for	يبحث عن	looked for	looked for
cheer	يهتف - يهلل	cheered	cheered
add	بضيف	added	added
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
start	يبدأ	started	started
agree	يقبل - يوافق	agreed	agreed
realize	يدرك	realized	realized
reply	یرد - پجیب	replied	replied
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
hug	يحضن - يحتضن	hugged	hugged
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted

### irregular verbs منتظمة deal

get help	يحصل علم؛ المساعدة	got help	got help
grow up	یکبر	grew up	grown up
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left
come down	ينزل	came down	come down
have fun	يستمتع	had fun	had fun

# Rued and Learn

#### Story: The travelers and man-

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a village. They were very good friends, and they grew up • together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. One day, the friends decided to go to the market in the nearby • town. "What time should we leave tomorrow?" asked Amin. "I think we should leave before sunrise • so it's not too hot to walk," said Ashraf.

"I agree," said Sultan.

The men got up 3 at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through the desert road. They carried backpacks 3 on their backs with water and snacks. The men enjoyed chatting 3 about their lives and their families.

"So, is your daughter, Noura, enjoying school?" asked Amin.

"Well, she seems very happy, and she likes her teacher and her friends," replied Ashraf. "But she's finding reading difficult. I think I need to help her more."

"Yes, sometimes learning is a bit hard of at first," said Sultan, "I'm sure she'll achieve great things."

After a while, they came to an oasis ②, and saw a beautiful deer ② with big eyes. When they got closer ⑤, the deer ran away ⑥, and there was a noise in the leaves. They saw that the deer was back with her baby. It was a beautiful scene ②. The men then looked up and saw pigeons ⑤ in the palm trees. The pigeons cooed ⑤ at each other. "How nice it is to see all these special things with my best friends!" said Amin.

"Yes, this is a lovely place!" added Ashraf.



🕕 نشأوا

و قريية - مجاورة

😉 شروق الشمس

استيقظوا

🔁 حقائب الظهر

و دردشة - حديث

🕜 صعب بعض الشيء

🔞 واحة

غزال 😉

🐠 اقتربوا

🕕 هرب - رکض میتعدًا

🔁 مشهد - منظر

🚯 جماہ

المدر صوت هدیل (صوت الحمام)



Suddenly , there was a crack of a branch . Sultan looked behind him, and then started to run back towards the village. Ashraf climbed a tree, but Amin didn't move. He realized he was on his own . Amin slowly turned around and saw what his friends had seen – a black wolf .

He immediately of fell to the ground of and pretended to be dead. Amin didn't move. The wolf came up to him and touched his face with his nose. It whispered to something in his ear, then walked back into the desert.

Sultan came back, with two men from the village. "Are you OK?" Sultan asked.

🗗 فجأة

🗗 صوت انكسار غصن شجرة

طاعاً 🕏

🕑 وحيد - بمفرده

ين دئين

🥸 على الفور - مَي الحال

🐠 سقط على الأرض

💯 تطاهر - ادّعی

🗷 ھفس

🥸 خائف - مرعوب

Ashraf came down from the tree. "What did the wolf whisper to you?" he asked. Amin looked sad and said, "Never travel with friends who leave you when you're in danger." You, Sultan, ran back to the village to get help. Thank you. You, Ashraf, climbed the tree so the wolf would eat me, and not you!"

"I'm sorry, Amin," said Ashraf, feeling bad. "I was so scared . I want to be a better friend from now on."

# Activity Book Text

#### The fish and the shark

One day, Little Fish was swimming with her friends in the wide, blue sea. They were playing games in the coral reef • and having fun. They

could see their families who weren't far away. Later that day, while they were playing, they saw a dark shadow of moving towards them. It was the early afternoon, but suddenly the sea looked dark and frightening of a huge shark with a big mouth and a long strong



🚺 الشعاب المرجابية

🕗 ظل - حيال

🕄 مرعب - مخيف

🐠 ذيل

shape of a huge shark with a big mouth and a long, strong tail .

Little Fish was very frightened 6. She looked for her family خائمة-مرتعبة 6 and she saw her father swimming towards her.

🕝 کن شجاعًا

"Listen to me everybody," said Father Fish. "Everybody come together, quickly."

🕜 استدار - التفّ 🔞 هَلُلَ - ابتهُج

All the fish swam towards Father Fish. "If we all swim together, we'll look like a big shark. Come together everybody. Now, be

🧿 حُضُن

brave 6 Little Fish, and swim with me. We'll all swim together towards the shark."

As they swam, they made a big shadow in the shape of a shark ... a bigger shark! The shark saw this big shadow and he thought, "Oh, dear. That shark is bigger than me. I think it might be dangerous. Perhaps I'll go home." And he turned around o and quickly swam away. All the fish cheered 3 and hugged 9 each other. They were happy because they were safe again.

#### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

grew - village - nearby - scenes - friends

Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan lived in a 0 . They were very good , and they 6 up together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. The friends go to the market in the nearby town from time to time. They enjoy seeing the beautiful 6 together.

### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. were friends good They very.
- 2. travel with Who to you would like?

#### Unit 5

- 3. pretended dead He be to.
- 4. leave we time should What?
  - ?
- 5. studied They at school same the.



Write a short story of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

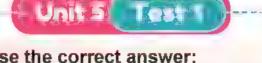
### "A short story"

Write a story you have read at the library and you liked it.











## Listen and choose the correct answer:

#### نص الاستماء موجود آخر الكتاب.

- 1. When Lucy was (twelve thirteen fourteen fifteen), she decided to travel around the world.
- 2. They decided to go to (Egypt Tunisia Algeria Morocco) first.
- 3. Lucy uses a (wheelchair motorbike scooter skateboard).
- 4. Lucy looked up the best places to visit on the (map internet compass television).

### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

environment - humans - challenge - canoe - world

Interviewer: Hello, Emily. Nice to meet you.

Emily : Hello. Thank you.

Interviewer: Where did you spend your last vacation?

: I went to the Amazon. Emily

Interviewer: Why did you choose that part of the 0

: Because I wanted to learn more about what @ Emily

are doing to the environment.

Interviewer : What skills did you learn there?

Emily : I learned how to 6 . I also learned how to take

better photos.

: Were there any problems? interviewer

: Yes, my biggest @ was that it was often too hot Emily

to sleep.

Interviewer: Did you have a nice time there? : Yes, I enjoyed seeing nature a lot. **Emily** 

#### Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

For a long time, people have dreamed of traveling away from the Earth to visit the moon and some of our planets. Until recently, most people thought that space travel was a dream. But man's dream of traveling to



the moon has become a fact. Rockets are so <u>powerful</u> that they can travel through space at a great speed and at a great height. During the flight, space travelers face some problems. They become weightless and they need oxygen tanks to breathe. Man has been able to reach the moon and walk on it. He has even collected some rocks and put scientific instruments there to send information about the moon. As there is no air or water, there is no life on the moon. However, some people expect that there will be space cities in the future. Do you agree with them?

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Man has reached the moon by (planes jumbo jets ships rockets and spaceships).
- 2. The underlined word "powerful" means (strong weak small tiny).
- 3. People need (carbon dioxide oxygen hydrogen nitrogen) to breathe.

## Answer these questions:

- 4. What's your answer to the question in the last line in the passage?
- 5. What makes life impossible on the moon?

### The Recoder The Silk Road (4Ms)

# A- Read and write (Yes) or (No): (2Ms)

- 1. Today, it's difficult to buy and sell goods in different parts of the world. (
- 2. In the past, it was safer for traders to travel in caravans. ( )
- 3. The Silk Road was very important for over 2,500 years. ( )
- 4. Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. (
- Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)
- 5. How does the Silk Road get its name?
- 6. Why did travelers in the past use camels?



#### Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. We went to the airport to see (of at off from) my cousins.
- The spaceship is (preparing prepare is prepared prepared) before the mission into space.
- 3. Amira carefully (put away her new book put away it it put away her new book put away).
- 4. Experiments (do are doing done are done) every day by the team.
- 5. The space flight (are watched watched is watched watch) by millions of people.
- 6. Toga loves (reads read reading to reading) in her free time.

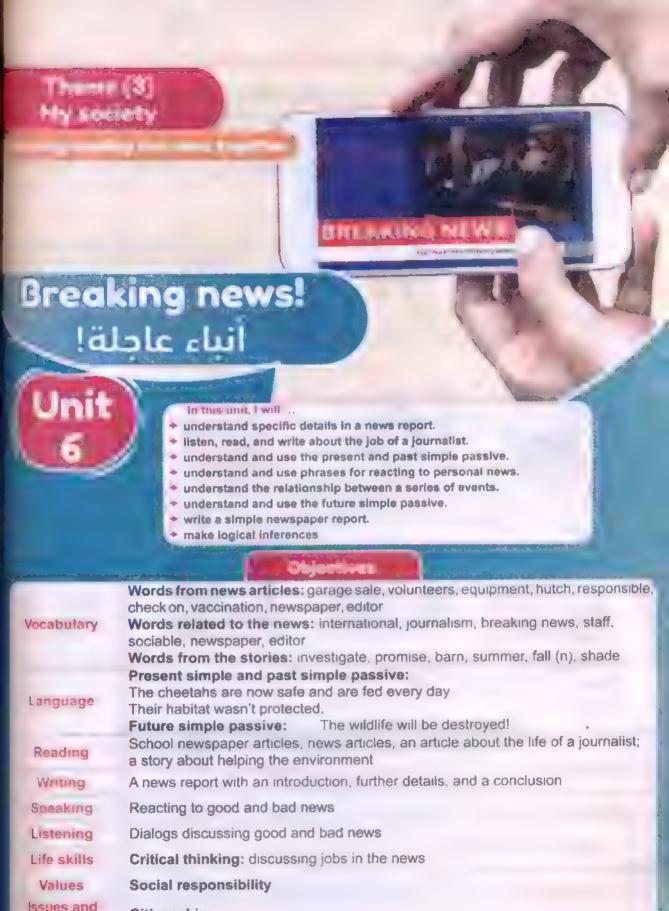
# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

- 1. Omar Hegazy did Which break records world?
- 2. lived ago years of hundreds Ahmad Ibn Majid.
- 3. were the trip of What challenges the?
- Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

#### Ideas to help you:

- Where did you go? What skills did you learn?
- Was it difficult? What did you like best about the trip?
- What were the challenges of the trip?





Integrated crosssocial studies: using media to improve the world around you

Citizenship

challenges

### Lesson 1 Our School Newspaper

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





newspaper בנובה - מבנفة



/ أنباء - أخبار



articles / مقالات



headlines , عناوین رئیسیة



, مُحَرِّر

editor



responsible ر مسؤول



volunteers ا متطوعون



check on ريتفقد - يطمئن على



garage sale بمعرض بيع بضائع مستعملة



equipment



hutch رُقَفُص (منزل صغير للأرنب) ﴿ مُعَدَاتَ - أَدُواتُ

del distriction d



vaccinations تطعيمات



### Prepositions

look after		get better at	يتحسن في
care for		on time	مي الوقت المحدد
married to	منروحه من	on the day	في هذا اليوم

### Sentences & Expressions

in good shape	في حالة جيدة	once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
take turns	نتناوب (نتبادل) الأدوار	twice a week	مرتان في الأسبوع
do math	يجرب عمليات حسابية	find it difficult	يجد صعوبة
the rest of the cla	باقب الفصل SS	do calculations	يُجري حسانات

# Literity Book

raise money	يجمع مالأ	special event	حدث ممیر (خاص)
local charities	جمعيات خيرية محلية	models	نماذج
community	مجتمع	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية

	Vocabulary Study SB Tudents
volunteer	: someone who works for free
equipment	: tools or things you need to do something
newspaper	: a printed paper that gives you news
editor	: the person who chooses the news stories
hutch	: a small house for a rabbit
responsible	: being someone others can rely on
vaccinations	: a medicine that protects a person or animal from a disease
check on	: to make sure that someone is doing well

### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs منظمة

	of the same of the		
collect	يجمع	collected	collected
look after	أ شبيعة	looked after	looked after
call	ൻത്ന് - ezzi	called	called
protect	تحمت	protected	protected
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
care	تعيم - تعيبة	cared	cared
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
decorate	يزين - يزخرف	decorated	decorated
rely	يعتمد	relied	relied

أضبال الرافقطية

### Irregular verbs

	Piesent			San June
1	bring	يُحْضِر - يجلب	brought	brought
1	sell	يبيع	sold	sold
	buy	يشري	bought	bought
	make sure	يتأكد	made sure	made sure
	get	يحصل علم	got	got
	know	تعرم	knew	known
	send	يرسل	sent	sent
	think	يعتفد - يظن	thought	thought
	give	يعطب	gave	given
	teach	بُعَلُم - يُدَرُّس	taught	taught
	choose	يحتار	chose	chosen

### Did you know?

عل تعلم آ

Newspapers are made on a printing press. The modern printing press was invented by a German called Johannes Gutenberg around 1440! تُطْبَع الصحف (الجرائد) في المطابع. نم اختراع المطبعة بشكلها الحديث بواسطة ألماني يدعن يوهانس غوتنبرغ حوالي عام 1440!



Read and learn



# Our School Newspaper

#### Making a garage sale

Every year we have a garage sale • at our school. This means volunteers • from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment •. These items are old, but they are still in good shape • and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we



collect is used to help children who need health care on in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers.

Everyone is really happy!

Noha





#### Looking after the class pet

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a hutch on the school garden. We take turns of with the rest of the class to look after of him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water.

He loves carrots of and lettuce of My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets of and be responsible of . Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet of . He comes in once a week to check on of Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his vaccinations of on time.

🤡 خَزْر 🌀 حُسِّ 6 يرعم (يعتني بِ) الحيوانات الأليفة

🕡 مسؤولین 🔞 طبیب بیطری 🤨 یفحص - یطمئن علی 🕩 تطعیمان - تحصینات



#### Helping younger children

My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math 9. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do calculations 9. The children also love our school newspaper 9 because

there are articles ② about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists ⑤, too! I read with a boy called Seleem. Seleem is getting better at ③ reading and writing now. He wrote an article about our school football team. We sent it to the editor ② of the school newspaper. The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in the newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!

🕡 إجراء العمليات الحسابية 🧿 إجراء الحسابات 😉 صحيفة - جريدة 🧿 مقالات 😉 صحفيين 🄞 يتحسّن فب 🕡 مُحَرِّر



#### **Charity Day at School**

My class likes to raise money • for local charities.

Our teacher, Mrs Mariam, helps us organize a special event called Charity Day every few months.

We put tables and chairs in the school hall.



يجمع مالًا



1

Then we decorate the hall with flowers from the school garden. On Charity Day, our parents and people from the community come to buy things. Some children make cakes and lemonade to sell. My friend Fares and his sister Laila make delicious snacks, too. We also bring books and to sell. I like making models of, so I make models and I sell them on the day. We give the money we raise to local charities. It's a special day for the community and it's always a lot of fun!

# Exception of Lagran (1)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

equipment -- sale -- health -- volunteers -- care

from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen . These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. The money we collect is used to help children who need health in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

vaccinations - lettuce - check - responsible - hutch

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a in the school garden. We take turns with the rest of the class to look after him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to on Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his on time.



#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### charities - crafts - raise - community - decorate

My class likes to 
money for local charities. Our teacher,

Mrs Mariam, helps us organize a special event called Charity Day

every few months. We put tables and chairs in the school hall. Then we

the hall with flowers from the school garden. On Charity

Day, our parents and people from the 
come to buy things.

Some children make cakes and lemonade to sell. We also bring books

and 
to sell.



#### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### newspaper - editor - calculations - articles - Grades

Hassan: Hi, Samir. I heard that your class does some good work at school.

Samir: Hi, Hassan. Yes, that's right. My class likes to help the younger children at our school.

Hassan: How can you do that?

Samir : Some of the children in 
3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math.

Hassan: What can you do for them?

Samir: Well! We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do 2

hassan: That's great! What else?

Samir : We help them read the school • . They love it because there are • about people they know in school.

Massan: You're doing a great job, Samir.

Samir: Thank you.





### Read the following text and answer the questions:

I'm Hassan. My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do calculations. The children also love our school newspaper because there are articles about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too! I read with a boy called Seleem. Seleem is getting better at reading and writing now. He wrote an article about our school football team. We sent it to the editor of the school newspaper. The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in the newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The underlined word "they" refers to the (stories children journalists).
- Seleem wrote a/an (book newspaper article) about our school football team.
- 3. The (editor teacher journalist) thought what Seleem wrote was great.
- B Answer these questions:
- 4. How often does Hassan's class go to Grades 3 and 4 classrooms?
- 5. Why do the children love their school newspaper?
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. a garage sale we Every year at have our school.



### Write an email of (70) words to your friend Dina:

Tell her about the charity work you do at school, how you help your friends who can't read or write well, and how you help your community. Your email address is rana@school.net and your friend's email address is dina@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

Ucerum 2

66

### Lesson 2 Language

#### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





attack إيهاجم



destroy يدمر



track ، يتعقب - يتتبع أثر



return تعود



conservation / حفظ - حماية



habitat / موطِن (موئل) طبيعتي



giant أضخم - عملاق



enemies أعداء

	Extre vocabulary	Tuni eta	III. II
cheetah	الفهد الصياد	Indian people	الشعب الهندي
leopard	ٍ نمر مُرَقُط - فهد	China	الصين
panda	باندا	country	بلد - دولة
bamboo	نبأت الخيزُران - البامبو	Kuno National Park	محمية كونو الوطنية
almost	تقريبًا	successful	ناجح
recently	مؤذرًا - حديثًا	pleased	سعید - مسرور

### Prepositions

Connect Plus 6 -

n danger	مَى خطر	move around	يتنقَّل - يتجول
on social me	dia على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	by you	بواسطتك
for example	علم سبيل المثال	cut down	يقطع

### Sentences & Expressions

The cheetahs are back! get lost

عادت الفهود الصيادة!

until the 1950s حتى فترة الخمسينيات a little worried

فَلِق بعض الشيء

يتوه - يصل الطريق

safe enough بعد فترة طويلة

آمنة بدرحة كافية

safe area live long, healthy lives

تعيش حياة صحية طويلة منطمة آمنة

### Conjugativo of com

Pres	ent	Past	The state of the s
return	zasī	returned	returned
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
watch	ىشاھد - يراقب	watched	watched
track	بتعقب	tracked	tracked
attack	يهاجم	attacked	attacked
design	لمصت	designed	designed
post	ينشر (علم الإنترنت)	posted	posted
destroy	ובמנ	destroyed	destroyed
worry	يَمْلَق - يُمْلِق	worried	worried

### Regular verbs منتظمة

Present		The state of the s	
cut down	ب يقطع	cut down	cut down
feed	يُطعم	fed	fed 12.1
build	إ ببني	built	built
show	يعرض	showed	showed (shown)

#### **Animal News**

#### The cheetahs are buch:

• • • the fastest animals in the world. have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared of in Ku However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India - Kuno National Park 6. The Indian people are very pleased of to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they

1 9 every day. They aren't watched 0 all the time, but they are tracked o so they don't get lost.

Some people are a little worried. This is because when the cheetahs move around more, they will meet other big cats, for example, leopards 0, which could attack the cheetahs. Some people are asking, "Is the area designed of to be safe enough?" It's so important that they are protected.

#### More giant pandas!

Who doesn't love a grant openda? There are lots of videos of them on social media! Were any of the videos ■ by you? Sadly , some years ago, giant pandas. were put in danger . Much of their habitat . was to build new homes. Their habitat wasn't

.... . Pandas only eat bamboo . which was cut down @ for the houses.

Many people were very worried, so the pandas and ento special areas, where they were protected. They were given 2 as much bamboo as they could eat.



- 🕕 الفهود الصيادة
  - 🕜 اختفت
- 🔞 حديقة (محمية) وطبية
  - 🕢 مسرورون سعداء
    - و يتم اطعامها
    - و لا يتم مراقبتها
  - 🕜 يتم تعقّبها (تبيّعها)
    - نمور مهود
    - و مُصِمْمِهِ مُغِدُة
    - 🧶 ضخم عملاق
      - ் பிரியி
      - மைய் மி
    - 🐌 فی وضع خطر
    - 🛂 موطن مولل
      - ك دُمْرِي
- 🗗 مجمية تتمنع بالحماية
  - 🕏 خبرران بامیو
    - نَا يُفْظع 📑
    - 🤨 ۇزىغىن مىي
      - Cubel 🐠



This conservation work أعمال الاستيقاء 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas. Now (الحفظ من الانقراض) there are almost 2,000! This number shows us something important. When we try very hard, we can help animals live long, healthy lives.

# Grammar Study 📆



The passive is formed with the present simple of the verb to be and the past participle of the main verb.

(am - is - are) + pp

💻 قاعدة تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط: 📗

#### Afflimative

### Example:

- O They feed the cheetahs every day.
  - The cheetahs are fed every day.

#### Negative

#### Example:

- O They don't watch the cheetahs all the time.
  - ▶ The cheetahs aren't watched all the time.

#### Question

#### Example:

- O Are the cheetahs protected?
  - Yes, they are.
  - Yes, they are protected.

# Past simple (active and passive) Vigazally egised mualibutual motal:

The passive is formed with the past simple of the verb to be and the past participle of the main verb.

(was - were) + pp

🎩 قاعدة تحويل زمن الماضي البسيط:

#### Africative

#### Example:

- O People destroyed much of the habitat to build new homes.
  - Much of the habitat was destroyed by people to build new homes.

#### Negative

#### Example:

- O People didn't protect the habitats of pandas.
  - ► The habitats of pandas weren't protected by people.

#### Question

### Example:

- Were any of the videos posted by you?
  - No, they weren't.

## Exercises on Lesson 2

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



#### are fed - are protected - looked - were brought - are tracked

Cheetahs lived in India until the 1950s, but slowly died out. Recently, eight of them • .... to Kuno National Park. The cheetahs now live in a safe area and they • . . . every day. Also they • so that they don't get lost. Some people are worried they will meet leopards and other big cats, but it's important that cheetahs • now.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



#### were given - wasn't protected - were put - was cut down

Sadly, glant pandas are in danger. Their habitat 

Pandas only eat bamboo, and the bamboo 

to build new houses. The pandas 

into safe areas and they as much bamboo as they could eat. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas but now there are almost 2,000!

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The cheetahs (are was is) fed every day.
- 2. The cheetahs are (tracks tracked track) so they don't get lost.
- 3. The giant pandas (are puts are putting were put) in danger some years ago.

- 4. The bamboo (was were are) cut down for the pandas to eat.
- 5. The giant pandas were (giving given gave) as much bamboo as they could eat.
- 6. (Does Were Is) the area designed to be safe enough?
- 7. It's important that cheetahs are (protects protect protected) now.
- 8. Were any of the videos (posted post posting) by you?
- Much of their habitat (were destroyed was destroying was destroyed) to build new homes.
- 10. Some years ago, giant pandas (was put were put are put) in danger.
- 11. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they (were fed was fed are fed) every day.
- 12. They (were watched are watched aren't watched) all the time, but they are tracked so they don't get lost.

4	Put the words in	the correct	order to mak	e sentences:
---	------------------	-------------	--------------	--------------

1. the fastest - are - Cheetahs - the world - in - animals.
4
2. designed - the area - Is - to be - enough - safe?
3. aren't - They - time - all - the - watched.
4. pandas - put - Giant - were - danger - in.
5. important - It's - that - they - protected - are.

### Lessons 4-4 Well done! & The life of a journalist

#### الكلمان الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





breaking news , أنباء عاجلة



news story خبر - قصة إخبارية



news reports م نقاریر إحباریت



TV reporter مراسل ىلفرىونى



journalism محافة



journalist mann



e<mark>ditor</mark> مُحرِّر - ناشر



press box مقصورة الصحامه



sociable شخص اجتماعی



international walk · wlgs



staff موطمون - فريق العمل



نَصّ

partner
cameraman
soundman
manager
office

مدير	details
مهندس الصون	internationally
مُصوْر	SAPWOY
شریك - رمیل	cab service

opinion مكتب

sommunicate udus

خدمة سيارات الأدره
<mark>قطار</mark> الأنفاق (المترو)
دولیًا - عالمیًا
تفاصیل
رأي
يتواصل

print (v)

### Prepositions

at the end of the day	مي بهايه اليوم	focus on	يركر على
look p facts	يبحث عن حقائق	at home	في الىيت
talk to	يتحدث إلى	all over Egypt	في جميع أنحاء مصر
related to	مىعلق د - مرنبط ب	on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
oy midday	يحلول منتضف اليوم	on vacation	في عطلة (إحارة)
ready ter	جاهز لـ - مستعد لـ	decide to	يقرر أن
good at	כיד טט	able to	قادر علی
work for	بعمل لدی	agree to	پوافق علم ينمق علم

### عبارات Phrases

When we hear	good news, we say	When we hear	bad news, we say
Oh, wow!	أوه، مذهل!	Oh, no!	أوه، لاا
That's great!	هذا راثع!	That's too bad!	هذا مؤسعا!
Well done!		Better luck next	time.
	أحست!		حظ أومر في المرة القادمة
That's amazing	(awesome - fantastic)	What a pity!	
news!	هذه أخبار رائعة!		يا للأسف!
I'm so pleased	for you!	I'm sorry.	
	أنا سعيد حدًا من أحلك!		أنا آسف.

### Sentences & Expressions

lost the game		My aunt had a b	aby.
	خسر المباراة	_	أنجبت عمتي (خالتي) طفلًا،
I won a prize in the	science fair!	passed my test	
ض العلوم!	لقد فزت بجائزة في معر		اجتزت اختباري
			_

have a party

save time يقبم حفلة

يوفر وقثا

### Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

international: related to more than one country

breaking news: new information about an event that is happening now

journalism: the study, or job, of writing articles for newspapers and

magazines

sociable : describing a person who likes talking to, and being with,

other people

staff : people who work at a place, for example, a hotel

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs annio disci

Present			
focus	يركز	focused /	focused
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
happen	يَحْدُث	happened	happened
research	يىحث	researched	researched
interview	يحرب مقابلة	interviewed	interviewed
pass	يجتاز	passed	passed
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted
imagine	يىخيل	imagined	imagined
describe	يصف	described	described
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
invite	ا يدعو	invited	invited

#### irregular verbs المنظمة المنظمة

hurt	ىۋدى - ىۋلە	hurt	hurt
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let

O Pro	esent		
lose	يحسر	lost	lost
win	یفور	won	won
feel	ا يشعر	felt	felt
say	يقول	said	said
get up	بنهض - يستىقط	got up	got up



### Activity Book Text

Hi, Jana. I've got some great news.

My parents have agreed to let me
have a party • for my birthday!



Jana: Oh, wow! That's fantastic news.
When's your birthday?

🚺 اؤيم دفلة

My birthday's next month. I can invite all my مسرورة سعيدة و و المعادة و ال

(රාගලිය යින 🚯

Jana: That's great! I'm so pleased of for you. What date is it?

🕢 هدا مؤسف

It's on Saturday, September 16th. Can you come?

Jana: No, I won't be able to come. That's a pity 9. I'm visiting my grandparents that weekend.

Oh, no! This too bad o. Let's do something together the weekend before.

Jana: That's a good idea.

#### The life of a journalist

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist •, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist.

I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university. I think a journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

I love my job. It's fun, and every day is different because we don't know what news will come in. There are many kinds of journalists. I'm a news journalist, so I write the breaking news 3, that is, the news as it starts to happen.

Every day, I get up early and have breakfast. Then I call my editor to see what stories I need to write about. I write

my news reports from home, but I can get anywhere in the city if there's a story there. Luckily, we have an excellent subway of and cab of service here. I travel all over Egypt, and also internationally of, when I need to. Last week, I was in India!

All the news stories are sent to the editor by midday. Then I get some lunch, often with a friend. In the afternoon, I start researching stories and interviewing of people, ready for the next day.

Sometimes, if a news story is breaking, I need to work in the evening, and into the night, and sometimes even on weekends!

Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one of the main stories 3. It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily 3, nobody was hurt.

- 🛈 صحفیة دولیة
  - الصحافة ا
- 😉 الأخبار العاجلةِ
- 🗿 مترو (قطار) الأنفاق
  - 😉 سيارة أجرة
  - 6 دوليًا عالميًا
  - 🕜 إجراء مقابلات مع
  - الأخبار (القصص) الرئيسية
    - 🥝 لجسن الحظ

I think my report was liked because I interviewed works of the staff who work at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I described how they felt. My editor said she liked it very much.

ل تقریر

لل أحريت مقابلات

🔑 الموظفين - العاملين

😉 شخص اجتماعی

As you can see, my job is very exciting, and there's something new every day. I am quite sociable s, so I enjoy interviewing people and chatting to other journalists about news stories. However, I also like to be quiet at home when I write my news articles. I love living in Egypt, too. It's fun, and I have a lot of friends here. I'm very happy!

# Activity Book Text

#### Blog i

My name is Waleed Bashir and I'm a sports journalist • I love my job because I love sport! Every morning, I go to the newspaper office and I have meetings with • my editor and other journalists. Then we decide which games I need to watch.



Downlead

0.020

If it's a football game, I arrive about three hours before the game starts. Journalists from television, radio, and newspapers sit together in a place that's called the press box . We all chat while we get ready. During the game, I make a lot of notes .

At the end of the game, I watch the interviews with the club managers of and players, and I make more notes. I go back to the press box and I start writing my story of linclude what the players say, details of the game, and

محقش لآاهن

Home

اعقد اجتماعات

و مقصورة الصحافة (الصحمبين)

ىدردش 🔾

و ملاحظات

🙃 مدراء النادي

🕜 خبر

الله مقالة

😉 لتوفير الوقت

my opinion of the game. I finish the article on the press box and send it to my newspaper office to print. All the articles are sent from the press box to save time on

# Exercises on Lessons 3 4

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

editor - staff - stories - international - interviewed

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an journalist. Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one of the main . It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily, nobody was hurt. I think my report was liked because I lots of the staff who work at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I described how they felt. My said she liked it very much.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



#### a pity - That's too - Oh, no

Amira : Hi, Fareeda.

Fareeda: Hi, Amira. Are you OK?

Amira : Not really. I hurt my hand when I was playing volleyball.

Fareeda : • bad. I'm sorry.

Amira : Now I can't play in the school team next week.

Fareeda : What 6 . . . . . ! Don't be sad. Come to my house

and we can watch a movie together.

Amira: Thanks, Fareeda. That would be nice.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



Better luck next time. - done! - pleased for you! -That's awesome - wow!

Seleem : Hi, Tarek.

Tarek : Hi, Seleem. You look happy!

Seleem : I am! I passed my science test with 72%. Tarek : Oh, 0 ...... news. Seleem : Thanks! I'm really happy because I usually find science very difficult. Tarek : Well 6 ...... I'm so 0 ...... I didn't pass my science test. I have to do it again. Seleem : I'm sorry, Tarek, 9 ...... I'm sure you'll pass next time. Tarek



### Read the following text and answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university. I think a journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

#### Choose the correct answer:

1. Sylvia lives in (America - England - Egypt).

: Thanks, Seleem.

- Sylvia studied journalism at (school university work).
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "international" is (national foreign - famous).

## **Answer these questions:**

- 4. What did Sylvia decide to focus on at school? \*
- 5. What does a journalist need to be good at?



Unit 6

Unit 6
Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
1. you - can - What - see - the photos - in?
· · ?
2. That's - no! - Oh, - bad - too!
<b>)</b> ,
3. was - Why - excited - Sylvia - Monday - last?
• ····································
4. pleased - so - I'm - you - for!
······································
5. university - at - journalism - studied - I.
6. Egypt - in - Does - living - like - Sylvia?
2 ?
Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements
"Would you like to be a journalist?"
Mhy - Why not

Ideas to help yo			
	************	 	
		 	9
		2	
• ( • ) • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		4300
***************************************		 	
*******************************		 	
	***********	 The state of the s	
	****************	 	

Term 2

### Lesson 5 Language

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary











/يتحرب - يُحقِّق

Prepositions

investigate peaceful (v) /هادئ - مریح

promise זַֿאַר - יאשר

fertilizer رسماد - مخصب

Extre	Vocabulary	ضافية	ا كلمات
local newspaper	صحيفة محلية	fishermen	صيادون
truth	حقيقة	polluted river	نھر مُلَوْث
notes	ملاحظات	dead fish	أسماك نافقة (ميتة)
factories	eilno	chemicals	مواد كيميائية - كيماميات

went for walks	ذهبوا للتمشية	pick up the trash	يلتقط (يجمع) القمامة
far from	بعیدًا عن	at the side of the river	على ضفة النهر
find out.	يكتشف - يعرف	by the river	بجانب النهر

### Vocabulary Study SB Students

peaceful	: very quiet and relaxing
----------	---------------------------

promise	:	to	sav	that	something	will	he d	lone
promise	-	CO	Say	ulat	Someuning	AA 111	DC C	OHE

### Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs achiic disci

	y		
investigate	يتحرى	investigated	investigated
pollute	يلوث	polluted	polluted
promise	يَعِد	promised	promised
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
die	يموت	died	died
change	يُغَيِّر - يتغير	changed	changed
kill .:	يقتل	killed	killed
test	يختبر	tested	tested
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up	cleaned up
print	يَطبع .	printed	printed
check	يفحص	checked	checked
publish	ينشر	published	published

### أفعال غير منتظمة معالمة المعال عدد المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة المعالمة الم

Present			
get to	يصل إلم	got to	got to
come back	تعود	came back	come back
feed	يُطعِم	fed	fed
know	يعرف	knew	known
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out

#### Lesson Notes

□ die > > > > dying The fish are dying.

للحظ أي عند إضافة (ing) لفعل منتو بـ (ie) تُحول الـ (ue) إلى (y) ثم نضيف الـ (ing).



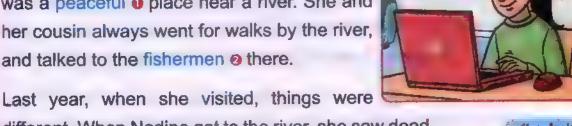


### Read and learn



#### Reporter Nadine saves the fire

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin, Remas, at their home. It was a peaceful o place near a river. She and her cousin always went for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen @ there.



different. When Nadine got to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too.

🕕 هاديا - نساكن

Paulcus (2)

cia B

فيحيقة (جريدة) مطية

🗗 مراسل صحفی - میاسل آخیار

"Where are all the fishermen?" she asked her cousin.

"They've stopped coming here," said Remas, " and the fish are dying 6."

"But why?" asked Nadine.

"We don't know," said Remas.

They went home feeling sad. Nadine's uncle is the editor at the local newspaper ...

"Uncle," said Nadine at dinner, "I'd like to be a news reporter 6. Can I work for you? I want to find out why the fish are dying. We need to do something

to protect the river, or it will be destroyed. All the fish will be killed, and the fishermen will never come back."

👩 مُلُوْن

🕜 مواد کیمیائیة - کیماویات

Uncle listened carefully, and agreed with Nadine. He went to the river with her the next day.

قریر إخباری (محفی)

أغد - إنعهد

ڻ يَحَقَٰق

"Look at the color of the water," he said "That tells me the water is polluted • There could be chemicals • from factories or from farms. The chemicals are dangerous for

🕕 سماد - مُخَصِّب

الله يُختَبَر

wildlife. The wildlife will all be destroyed I'd like you to write notes about the problem, and take some photos," he said.

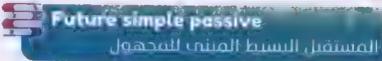
Nadine and Uncle walked up the river and saw there were some factories and farms. Then they went home, and Nadine wrote her notes for her news report • Uncle read her notes and said, "This is very good, but you are going home tomorrow. I promise • I'll send my reporter to investigate • this week. Your notes will be sent to her."

One week later, Nadine woke up early in the morning. She went to the laptop in the living room and saw an email from her uncle. He told her to look at the website of his newspaper.

And there it was – the full story of the polluted river! Uncle's reporter interviewed people at the factory and on the farms. One of the farms was using a new fertilizer that wasn't tested correctly. It was killing the plants on the land and the fish in the river. The farmers changed their fertilizer very soon after. Now, the land and the river are starting to get better.

Nadine was so pleased to read the article. She was also very happy when she read in the paragraph at the end, "Thanks very much to our young reporter, Nadine Shawky. Nadine helped to save our river by asking us to investigate why the fish were dying. Now, the river will be cleaned up. The fish will be healthy again!"

# Grammar Study



- We start a passive sentence with the most important information.
  - 🏾 نبدأ جملة المجهول بأهم معنومة (المراد التركيز عليها).
- The subject of the sentence is usually unknown or unimportant.
  - 💻 فاعل جملة المجهول عادَّة ما يكون غير معروف أو ليس له أهمية.
    - will + be + pp
- قاعدة تحويل زمن المستقبل البسيط؛

#### **Examples:**

- The children will clean up the river.
  - The river will be cleaned up by the children.
- O People will destroy the wildlife.
  - The wildlife will be destroyed.

### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

walks - fishermen - peaceful - home - river

and her cousin always went for 6

by the river, and talked to the

there.



## Read the following text and answer the questions:



When Nadine stayed with her uncle, aunt, and cousin last year, she saw that there were lots of fishermen there. There were no animals and birds by the river. She wanted to do something to protect the river, so she took her uncle to see it. He said, "The wildlife will all be destroyed." He asked Nadine to write some notes and take some photos. When Nadine went home, her uncle, who is a newspaper editor, gave her notes to a reporter. Then he sent the reporter to investigate the problem. One week later, Nadine read an article on her uncle's newspaper website. Her uncle's journalist discovered that one of the farmers was using a fertilizer that was polluting the river. It was killing the plants and the fish. When the farmer stopped using the fertilizer, the river started to get better. Soon, the river will be cleaned up and the fish will be healthy again.



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. There were no animals and birds by the (lake river sea).
- Nadine's uncle asked her to write some notes and take some (photos

   reports articles).
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word 'protect" is (destroy save check).

### B

#### **Answer these questions:**

- 4. Who did Nadine's uncle send to investigate the problem?
- 5. What will happen to the river now?

### 3

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Your notes will be (sending send sent) to the reporter.
- We need to do something to protect the river, or it will be (destroys destroyed - destroy).
- 3. All the fish will be (killed kills kill) in that polluted water.
- 4. They will never (coming come came) back again.
- 5. The wildlife will (is was be) destroyed if we don't stop pollution.



- 7. She (will be feed will feed be feed) the chickens every day.
- 8. The chickens (will be fed will fed be fed) every day.
- 9. He promised he will (be sent send sent) a reporter to investigate.
- 10. What will be (done does do) to help the wildlife?
- 11. The reporter (will publish will be published be published) the article on the newspaper website.
- 12. The article (will publish will be published be published) on the newspaper website.

at the morae in the contest of the manner	4	Put the words	in the correct order	r to make sentences
---	---	---------------	----------------------	---------------------

1.	was - It - place - a peaceful - a river - near.
	prohomotoreassallandisselectures occupation and another ordered an
0	like to - I'd - he - reporter - a news

· ·
14

3. you - to	- Work - I - Can?	,
<b>.</b>		

### Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nada:

Tell her about an article you read about pollution. Tell her how pollution is dangerous to the environment and how we can stop it. Your email address is <a href="mailto:mail.com">mayar@hotmail.com</a> and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:nada@school.net">nada@school.net</a>.

From:	
То:	
Subject:	
444114444444444444444444444444444444444	

### Lesson 6 Writing: A news report





#### The news report should contain



newspaper's name

وصف أو توضيح يُكتّب تحت صورة <mark>caption</mark> اسم الصحيفة

headline

عنوان رئيسي main text

نص رئيسي - متن الخبر

photo

reporter's name

كلمات إضافية

اسم المراسل



### The main text of the news report consists of



introduction

conclusion مقدمة

خاتمة

further details

تفاصيل إضافية

Extra Vocabulary

school director	مدير المدرسة	event	حدث
work hard	يعمل بجد	science fair	معرض العلوم
information	معلومات	talent show	عرض مواهب
proud of	فخور بـ	give out prizes	يوزع جوائز
sports day	يوم رياضي ،	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة
the sports area	منطقة (صالة) الرياضة	basketball	كرة السلة
race		tug-of-war	ِشُدِّ الحبل
long jump	الوثب الطويل	the 100-meter runnii ة 100 متر	ng سباق الركض لمِساف
high jump	القفز العالي	the winning teams	الفِرْق المَائَرُة

### Adjectives

awesome	مذهل - رائع	positive	أتخانت
fantastic	رائع	negative	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
amazing	مدهش	tired	مُتغب
popular	شائع - رائج	exciting	ممتع - مثير

### Activity Book

success	ىجاح	topic	موصوع
concert	حفل موسيقي	art show	عرض فنب
orchestra		junk modeling compe	etition
فرقة موسيقية - أوركسترا		المحلمات (الجردة)	مسابقه عمل نمادح من
musical instruments	آلات موسیقیق	play (n)	مسرحية
choir	كورال	give a presentation	يلقي كلمه امتباحية

### Conjugation of verb

### Regular verbs aabita disai

s Present		Post	
decorate	يزين	decorated	decorated
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
play	يعزف	played	played
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

### Irregular verbs achito pic fleci

Present			
take part	يشارك	took part	taken part
give out	يوزع	gave out	given out



### How to write a news report

		n text of the news report, follow this structure: her details, and conclusion.
ĺ,	Write in the past	tense: Our school sports day was last Thursday.
		es from people who were at the event: "I'm so ou – you worked so hard to make today fantastic."
- 4	Include your opi amazing!	nion by using adjectives: Our sports day was
•	<mark>قدمة،</mark> ثم تفاصیل	لكتابة النص الرئيسي للتقرير الإخباري، اتَّبِع هذا التركيب: المُعُ إضافية، ثم الخاتمة.
		🖵 اكتب بصيغة الماضي:
	Our	school sports day was last Thursday.
	:	🗖 استخدم اقتباسات مباشرة من الأشخاص الذين حضروا الحدث
	"I'm so proud of all o	of you – you worked so hard to make today fantastic."
		🖵 قم بإدراج رأيك باستخدام الصفات:
		Our sports day was amazing!
1		Note that
l	introduction :	In this paragraph, we give important information about the event. It can answer who, what, why, where, and when questions.
	further details :	In this paragraph, we give more details about the event.
	conclusion :	In this paragraph, we give final information and opinions.



#### Read and learn

newspaper's name اسم الصحيفة



#### <mark>headline</mark> عنوان رئیس<mark>ب</mark>

#### Marley School News

#### Best school sports day ever!

<del>photo</del> صورة

caption

وصف توضيحي

للصورة



The tug-of-war race at the end of the afternoon

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated • the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned • all the races

We think all the parents loved

it, too!

Many girls and boys took part ①, and there were many different things to see. Lots of people watched the exciting football, volleyball, and basketball games. Well done to all the winning teams! The races, such as the 100-meter running, long jump ②, and high jump ③ were popular, too. Reem, from Year 3, won first place ② for her high jump. Reem s highest jump was one meter!

🕡 زيّن - رحزم

Jahha 2

🗿 سيافات - ونافسات

🐠 شارك - اشترك

ب سرت - استرت

🗗 انوثب الطويل

القفز العالمي

🕜 فارت بالمركر الأول

🔞 مديرة المدرسة

Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school director 9, Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you — you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home tired, but happy. Our sports day was amazing!

Story by Waleed

reporter's name اسم المراسل

نص رئيسي نص رئيسي



newspaper's name

اسم الصحيفة

# **IBRAHIM SCHOOL NEWSPAPER**

School concert a successi

headline عنوان رئیسی

> **photo** صورة



caption

ومما توضيحي للصورة

Young violin players

Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school hall and tickets were sold on the school website. Mr Amir's class decorated the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited.

Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical

instruments including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The choir has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music!

The concert started at 5 pm. First, the school director Mrs Mariam gave a presentation. She said, "This is a very special evening and I'm very proud of everyone". Then the orchestra played classical music. It was fantastic! There was a break in the middle of the concert, and some students served cold drinks and cakes. Then in the second half of the concert, the orchestra played and the choir sang. It was an awesome evening, and everyone went home feeling happy.

By Reem Mansour

reporter's name اسم المراسل

main text نص رئیسی

# Grammar Study





- We use an apostrophe before the letter s ('5) to say that something belongs to someone.
  - نستخدم (5) للتعبير عن الملكية.
  - ► That's Omar's bike (دراحه عمر).
- We also use it to talk about family and friends.
  - كما يمكن استخدامها للحديث عن العائلة أو الأصدقاء.
  - Laila's aunt (سليا قصد) is an engineer.

### Exercises on Lesson 6

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

decorated - planned - took - races - awesome

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was .

Mr Kamal's class ... the sports area - it looked great!

think all the parents loved it, too! Many girls and boys .

part, and there were many different things to see.

### 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Mr (Amir's \_ Amir is \_ Amirs) class decorated the hall with flowers.
- 2. (Reem is \_ Reems \_ Reem's) highest jump was one meter!
- 3. We're in Miss (Amals \_ Amals' \_ Amal's) class.

#### Unit 6

- 4. There are three books on the desk. They're (Gameela's Gameela is Gameelas') books.
- Shehab plays football. (Shehabs Shehabs' Shehab's) two footballs are in his room.
- 6. Mr (Abdullah's Abdullah is Abdullahs') students are doing a test.
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

instruments - play - presentation - concert - choir

- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
  - 1. What type it of is text?
    - ?
  - 2. class area Mr Kamal's the sports decorated.
  - Angeletioning productive and the confidence of t
  - 3. of all so proud I'm of you.
- 4. describe the text does What?
- 5. was Our day amazing sports!
- 74 A



Write a news report about an exciting event in your community:

#### Look at these ideas to help you.

Choose from the ideas in the box or think of your own.
 (an art show - a community environmental project - a sports competition - a play)

#### Remember these things:

- Write three paragraphs: introduction, further details, and a conclusion.
- Write in the past tense. Try to use the passive.
- Write what people said at the event.
- Include your opinion, e.g. It was fantastic! It was an awesome evening.



### Lesson 7 | Story: Farmer Sameh

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





barn خظیرہ



shade طِل طِل



summer مُضل الصيف أ



**fall** / فصل الخريف



season مصل - موسم /



n<mark>ature أراطبيعة أ</mark>



leaves أوراق الشجر



terrible storm قدويه قفصاد

	Extra Vocabulary	المات إضافيا	
farmer	مُزارع	land	أرض
fava beans	حبوب الفول	lots of space	مساحة كبيرة
figs	تين	market	سُوق
dates	بلح - تُمر	female sheep	إناث الأغنام
honey	عسل	wood	خشب
bees	نحل	bricks	طوب
desserts	حلوب	sunlight	ً ضوء الشمس
keep chicke	تائىت دخاڭ <b>us</b>	space	مساحة - متسع
have babie	تلد صغارًا	summary	ملخص - تلخيص

#### Prepositions

on the farm	في المزرعة	worried about	قلق بشأن
look after	تعيبت ن	made of wood	مصنوع من الخشب
burn down	يُدمّر احتراقًا	through the summer	خلال فصل الصيف

#### Adjectives

delicious	dark لذيذ	مظلمة
wooden	old ٔ خشبی - مصنوع من الخشب	قديم
safe	rainy	ممطر
ready	brìght جاهزة	لامع - زاهي

### Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

barn: a building on a farm for animals to sleep in

fall: the time in the year when the leaves fall from the trees

shade: a dark area with no sunlight

summer: the hottest season of the year

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs المعالمة المعال

Present		Part	PR
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
reply	يجيب	replied	replied
worry	يقلق	worried	worried
save	ينقذ	saved	saved

#### irregular verbs مُنْ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِينِ الْمُعَال

Present			
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
keep	ம்பிர்	kept	kept
build	سنس	built	built
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
shine	تُشرِق	shone (shined)	shone (shined)
come	يأني	came	come
burn	بحبرق	burned (burnt)	burned (burnt)



### Read and learn

### Storys Farmer Sameh

Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land, but they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep • and chickens, and the children helped him look after them.

Amina grew fava beans ② so she could make delicious ful mudamas. Monir and Menna had some bees, so they could have honey. With the honey, and the figs ③ and dates ④ from their trees, they could make awesome desserts ⑤.

The family had an old barn 6 where they kept the sheep. It was very important on cold and rainy days, or when the female sheep were having babies.

Sameh's friends, Hazem and Fareed, were worried about the barn. They thought it was too old and not safe.

🚺 كان يربي الأغنام

و حبوب الفول 🛭

التين 🔞

🕢 التمر - البلح

🖯 حلویات

🕝 حظیرة

🕡 الطوب

"Sameh," said Hazem, "your barn is very old and made of wood – it could easily burn." "Why don't you build a better barn from bricks ?" asked Hazem.

Sameh replied, "Because this year, I need to buy more sheep."

That year, summer 3 was very hot. There was no rain at all. The sun shone 9 every day, and the sky was bright blue. The wooden barn got very hot from the sun. One day, it started burning. Sameh



was at the market, but luckily, Amina was near and she saved the sheep from the barn. Hazem and Fareed came running. "Get some water from the kitchen!" shouted The Hazem to the children. "We need to save the barn!"

🥝 كانت تُشرِق

(ع الصف

🕦 تعاج - صرخ

But Amina wasn't worried. Everybody and all the animals were safe. After the barn burned down, they all sat and drank water.

الخريفة 📵

الظِلن 🛈

Fareed asked, "Where will you put the sheep now?"

الممور المعود

Amina replied, "We have some trees, so they can stay in the shade until the new barn is ready."

"Will you build another barn?" asked Hazem, "Oh yes," said Amina, "it'll be fine."

Sameh and his family worked hard through the summer. They built a new, bigger barn with bricks. In the fall ®, the new barn was ready. It was big enough for all their sheep. Their friends came to see the new barn.

"Well done," said Hazem

"This new barn is great," said Fareed.

Later that year, there was a terrible storm ®. Sameh and Amina put the sheep in the new barn. Hazem and Fareed came running with their sheep.

"Please can we put our sheep here?"

Hazem asked. "Yes, of course," said Amina. "There's lots of space," Sameh said. "I was sad and worried when our old barn burned down. Now, we have this big, fantastic barn!"

Everybody laughed and agreed.

# Activity Book Text

# Story: How many people talk to the old man?

An old man was sitting in the shade of his favorite tree. He saw a young man walking towards him. The young man stopped and asked

the old man a question. "Do you know the people in this village? What are they like?" he said.

The old man looked at him and replied, "What are the people like in the village you come from?"

"Oh, they are unfriendly ②. I don't talk to them," said the young man. "I think you'll find the people in this village are the same," said the old man quietly.

The young man looked upset €. He said goodbye and walked slowly to the village.

The next day, while the old man was sitting in the shade of his favorite tree, he saw another young man walking towards him. The young man stopped and asked the old man a question. "Do you know the people in this village? What are they like?"

The old man looked at him and replied, "What are the people like in the village you come from?"

"Oh, they are very friendly of and kind. I talk to all of them and I like them a lot," said the young man.

"I think you'll find the people in this village are the same," said the old man quietly.

The young man smiled happily. He said goodbye and walked quickly to the village.

الطل

غير ودودين

الله المنزعجًا 😉

عودود

#### Exercises on Lesson





#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### build - barn - sheep - farm - honey

Farmer Sameh lived on a small farm with his family. He kept of and cows, and his children kept bees for of the sameh had an old where he kept his sheep. His friends Fareed and Hazem were worried about the old barn. They told Sameh to buy a new one. Sameh couldn't of the anew barn because he needed to buy more sheep.

### 9

#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### storm - shade - space - burning - barn

Farmer Sameh had a barn. One day, Sameh's barn started 
! They saved the sheep, but they couldn't save the barn. While Sameh and his wife Amina built a bigger barn with wood, the sheep sat in the of the trees. In the winter, the barn was ready. Later that year, there was a terrible and other farmers came running with their sheep. They asked to put their sheep in the barn. Sameh's new barn was big enough for everyone's sheep. He agreed because there was lots of •

### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. did and Sameh What animals have his family?
- Sameh had happy a very life Farmer.
- 3. can They stay in shade the.
- 4. will put you Where sheep the?
- 5. sheep kept chickens Sameh and.

### Unit 6 Test 2

Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms

#### نص الاستماع موجود أخر الكتاب.

- 1. Sameh lived on a (city boat farm town) with his wife and his children.
- 2. They grow food to eat and a little to (make sell eat buy) at the market.
- 3. Sameh kept (goats cows horses sheep) and chickens.
- 4. Amina grew fava (beans peas bees pies) so she could make delicious ful mudamas.
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

Read the following text and answer the questions:

Newspapers are an important source of information. Many people begin their day by reading the paper. In this way, they learn what is going on in the world. There are newspapers to satisfy every reader. Most newspapers have several <u>sections</u>. In addition to the front page with the most important news, there are the sports section, the society page, the comics, the amusement section, a business page and others. Magazines are another important source of information. Some magazines are published weekly; others are put out monthly.

(5Ms)

There are news magazines, literary magazines and magazines for special interests such as photography, sports and art. Some are for men, others for women, and there's a selection of children's magazines too.



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Newspapers are an important source of (health sports information joy).
- 2. The (front back middle second) page is the most important one in a paper.
- 3. The underlined word "sections" means (parts magazines newspapers -readers).

### **Answer these questions:**

- 4. Why do a lot of people begin their day by reading the paper?
- Name three types of magazines.

The Reader Transportation today

(4Ms)

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

- (2Ms)
- 1. Ships could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road.

4. The Suez Canal is a very important sea route for businesses.

2. The Suez Canal was opened in 1896.

3. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long.

Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. Why was the Suez Canal built?
- 6. What does the Suez Canal connect?

### Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. The pandas (were will is was) put into special areas.
- 2. (Will Are Were Is) the area designed to be safe enough?
- 3. All the news stories are (sends sending sent send) to the editor.
- 4. Will more things (sell are sold were sold be sold) online in the future?
- 5. Miss (Laila is Laila Laila's Lailas') class put 150 chairs in the school hall.
- 6. Dangerous fertilizers won't be (used uses using use) again.

### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1. know you this village Do the people in?
- first place Reem high jump won for her.
- 3. will be to help wildlife What the done?

### Write an email of (70) words to your friend Yousef:

(5Ms)

Tell him about a sports day you enjoyed at school. Tell him what games you played, what competitions you won, and how the day was. Your email address is <a href="mailto:amgad@yahoo.com">amgad@yahoo.com</a> and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:yousef@hotmail.com">yousef@hotmail.com</a>.

From:

To:

Subject:



### Review 3 Test 3 on Units (5-6)



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:





#### نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Junko Tabei was a famous and brave (doctor editor adventurer officer).
- 2 She loved (climbing reading collecting protecting) mountains.
- 3. She trained hard on the mountains from the age of (seven eight nine ten),
- 4. In 1975, she finally reached the top of (Mount Everest Antarctica the Sahara Desert Cairo Tower).



journalist - fed - inside - zookeeper - cheetahs

Hesham: Hello, Kareem! I'm here to interview you about your job at the

zoo as a 0 .....

Kareem : Cool! What do you want to know?

Hesham: How often are the animals o

Kareem : It depends on the animal, but usually twice a day. They love

their food!

Hesham: Do they sleep outside or 8

Kareem : We bring a lot of the animals inside at night. But the big cats,

like the o . and tigers, are happy to stay outside.

Hesham: Thank you, Kareem.

Kareem: You're welcome.



#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Hi, I'm Rana. I've just got back from Luxor with my family! When we got to Luxor, we filled in the form at the hotel and went to our room. It was very nice and comfortable. Mom woke me up early so we could visit my uncle. He lives outside the city, so we left at 7 am. We figured out a good route, and we enjoyed the countryside. We loved being at Uncle's house,

#### Review 3

and we had a delicious lunch there. On the way back to Luxor, we dropped off Uncle's friend at the bus stop. It was a fun day. I wish we lived nearer to Uncle so we could see him more often!



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Rana has just got back from (Aswan Alexandria Luxor Giza).
- 2. When they got to Luxor, Rana and her family filled (off in on at) the form at the hotel.
- 3. The underlined word "figured out" means (stopped discovered completed - took).



#### **Answer these questions:**

- 4. Why did Rana's mom wake her up early?
- 5. Where did they drop off Uncle's friend?

#### The Reader The Silk Road

(4Ms)

#### 4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms

- 1. Traveling on the Silk Road was easy.
- The Silk Road reached the Mediterranean Sea over time.
- 3. Silk was a very cheap material.
- 4. The Silk Road made it impossible for countries to trade goods and share ideas



#### Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. Where did the Silk Road start?
- 6. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous?





Unit 7

In this unit, I will ...

- read and find specific information.
- understand and use the second conditional.
- · listen for specific details
- understand a sequence of events in a text.
- understand and use (not) as ... as to compare.
- describe objects using sounds/looks/ feets like.
- · write about a solution to a problem, including reasons.
- understand key words and phrases in a story.

#### Objective

Words related to inventions angerfish, edible coral reef cutlery, glow-in-the dark bike path filter straw decompose existed store (v) bacteria, prevent disease driveriess interactive planetarium, control (v), plow, ink, toothpaste, minimum paste, engines, sea life

Words from the story birdfeeder, birdseed, knot,

loop, clothes pins, gatepost, rope

Second conditional:

If I had a flying car, I would travel all around the world!
I would travel around the world if I had a flying car.

(not) as ... as:

Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are today.

Reading

A blog a dialog, a story about a school trip, a project, a story about somebody will a problem

Language

Writing Writing a solution to a problem, including giving reasons

Speaking Describing what things look/sound/smell like

Listening An interview with a scientist

Life skills Problem-solving: the problem of plastic in our oceans

Values Curiosity

Issues and challenges Environmental responsibility

Integrated crosscurriculum topics Science: appreciating inventions which help our environment

#### 1

# Lesson 1 People and the planet

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary









glow-in-the-dark bike paths مسارات دراجات تتوهَّج في الظلام



filter straws أنابيب تنقية



prevent diseases / يقري من الأمراض



decompose يتحلل



store یخزن



**bacteria** بکتیزیا

Extra Vocabular
-----------------

iliphidjiilals

	Extra rocasacti y	A before many of the same	
planet	كوكب	my own inventions	اختراعاتي الخاصة
environment	بيئة	cycling	راكبو الدراجات
ocean	محيط	cyclists	راكبي الدراجات
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	blog	مدونة إلكترونية
material	مادة	during the day	أثناء (خلال) النهار
type	نوع	comments	ً تعلیمَات



		102 103 1	
Unit 7			
takeaway food	وجبات سريعة	flavors	نکھات
forks	شوكات	flour	دقيق
knives	سكاكين	rice	أرز
spoons	ملاعق	plastic	بلاستيك
Prepositions			
Welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	at night	في الليل
throw away	يتخلص - يرمي	in the dark	في الظلام
instead of	بدلاً من	in the ground	في الأرض
for a long time	لوفت طویل جدًا	pass through	يمر من خلال
get into	يصل إلى	around the world	حول العالم
good for	جيد <b>بالنسبة ل</b>	caused by	ناتجة عن
Adjectives			
cool	رائع	great	رائع - عظیم
popular	رائجة - شائعة	special	خاص
different	مختلف	tasty	حَسَن المذاق
safe	أمِن	dangerous	خطير
dirty	قذر	fit	لائق بدنیًا
Activity Book			
organic things	أشياء عضوية	remote village	قرية نائية
living things	كائنات حية	environmentally-friendly	صديق للبيئة
encourage	يشجع	food stall	کُشك طعام
description	وَمْف	garbage can	سلة مهملات

→ Step Ahead

जिनका विकास

112

# Vocabulary Study S B Student's Hook

bacteria : something that can cause disease

decompose : to break into small parts

disease : a sickness

prevent: to stop something from happening

store : to keep

edible cutlery : something that you can eat

filter straw : something that can stop people getting sick

glow-in-the-dark : something that can help people cycle safely at

bike path night

# Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs منظمه الخطال منظمه

stay	مونت	stayed	stayed
travel	يسامر	traveled	traveled
glow	يتوهج - يضيء	glowed	glowed
store	يُخزن	stored	stored
solve	يحل	solved	solved
cause	يسبب	caused	caused
remove	يُزيل	removed	removed
fix	يُصلح	fixed	fixed
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled	cycled
prevent	يمنع	prevented	prevented
decompose	يتحلل	decomposed	decomposed
improve	يحَسُّن	improved	improved

#### bregular verbs

#### أفعال ليبر مناظمان

Prese	nt	Paid	PI
get sick	يمرض	got sick 😘	got sick
get bigger	ټکبر	got bigger	got bigger
make	يجعل - يصنع	made	made
know	يُعرف	knew	. known
throw	يقذف - يرمي	threw	thrown
keep	يحفظ - يحتفظ	kept	kept
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
break	پکسر	broke	broken

### Did you know!

### مل تعلم؟

The Ancient Egyptians were famous for their exciting inventions, such as ink! They used it to write and draw on papyrus.

اشتهر المصريـون الفدمـاء باختراعاتهـم الشيفه، مثـل الحـــر! حيـث اســــدـمـوه مــي الكتابـة والرسـم علــم ورق البـردـي.



# Read and learn

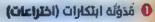






# femple and our planes

Welcome to my inventions blog •! I love learning about inventions that help the planet. I really want to make my own inventions when I'm older. Here are some cool inventions you might not know about.



#### Edible cutlery @

Having takeaway food 6 with friends and family is great. However, plastic knives 4, forks 5, and spoons 6 are bad for the planet. We usually use plastic cutlery once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't decompose 3, so it stays in the ground for a long time 9. Some plastic can then get into the ocean . Lots of people want to find a better idea. and cutlery that you can eat is becoming popular. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and some edible cutlery comes in different flavors 10, too!

#### Glow-in-the-dark bike paths 🕑

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows 🖲 in the dark. It stores 👺 solar energy for during the day. Then, at night, the path glows softly. Cyclists @ can see where they are going in the dark. It's safe, and it's good for the environment

و أدوات مائدة صالحة للأكل

📵 وجبات سربعة

🕜 سکاکین

😉 شوكات

و ملاعق

🕡 أدوات مائدة بلاستيكية

😉 يتطل

🧿 لفترة طويلة

🛈 المحيط

ال نکھات

🕑 مسارات للدراجات تتوهج (تضيء) في الظلام

🐌 تتوهّج - تضيء

🗗 تُحَاْن

🗗 الطاقة الشمسية

🕼 سَائِمُو الدراجاتِ - الدرّاجون

🐠 شَفَاطَاتِ التنقية (التصفية)

🐠 حُشن المذاق

🕲 بكتيريا

🐠 وُقُتُ مِن (مُنْعُتُ) الأَمراضُ

#### Filter straws 12

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty . However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have prevented diseases 4 in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

What problems do you think we need to fix on our planet? Tell me in the comments!



# Exercises on Lousen



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



#### bacteria - decompose - disease - prevent - Store

Drinking dirty water can cause 
because dirty water has a lot of 
in it. To 
yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. 
fresh food in a refrigerator, or a cool dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh and it won't start to

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### decompose - cutlery - edible - planet - flavors

Having takeaway food with friends and family is great. However, plastic knives, forks, and spoons are bad for the • . We usually use plastic cutiery once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't • , so it stays in the ground for a long time. Lots of people want to find better • that you can eat with. That is possible. Some people invented some • cutlery. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and comes in different flavors, too!

# Read the following text and answer the questions:

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel; it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows in the dark. These paths are called "glow-in-the-dark bike paths". These paths store solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the paths glow softly. Cyclists can see where they are going in the dark. These paths are safe, and they're good for the environment!



#### Choose the correct answer:

1. We all know that cycling is a good way to (play - practice - travel).

- 2. The new paths store (solar wind tidal) energy during the day. 3. The underlined word "fit" means (unfit - healthy - fast).
- **Answer these questions:**
- 4. What are the new paths called?
- 5. How are the new paths good?
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. straw A filter dangerous removes from water bacteria.
- 2. invention you would to use Which like?
- 3. a good Cycling travel is way to.
- 4. learning love inventions I about.
- 5. pass The bacteria straw can't the through.
- 6. important invention Which is most the?
- Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

The invention of "filter straws"

deas to help you:

solve problems - dirty water remove bacteria - prevent diseases



# Lesson 2

# Language



# الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



science competition مسابقة للعلوم



magazines

, مجلات



invention

ً/ اختراع



time machine آلة سفر عبر الزمن

#### Extra Vacubular

**Liotejnitoid** 

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة ·	the pyramids	الأهرامات
the future	المستقبّل	enter	يَدخُل
person	شخص	entry	مُدخَّل
junk food ası	طعام غیر صحی - وجبات سرب	weight	ونت

### Prepositions

work in groups	يعملون في مجموعات	from the past	من الماضي
talk about	يتكلم عن	look like	تبدو مثل
look online for ide	as يبحث عن أفكار عبر الإنترنت	a different time i	in history حقبة تاریخیة مختلفة
	يبت عن العدار عبر الإندريد		صنه ورتحته مجمعه
go back	يعود - يرجع	put on	האודיה



#### Sentences & Expressions

win a prize

draw a picture يصنع ملصق make a poster يرسه صورة would like to يرغب في a period of time فترة من الوقت form of transportation It sounds fun! وسيلة من وسائل النقل هذا يبدو ممتغاا

> look in magazines يفوز بجائزة يبحث في المجلات

# Conjugation of verb

#### Regular verbs assure disal

Present	A		
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
design	يصمم	designed	designed
wonder	يتساءل	wondered	wondered
look like	تُشبه	looked like	looked like
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
control	يتحكم في	controlled	controlled

#### trregular werbs

Preser	nt 1	THE RESERVE	
win	يفوز	won	won
build	يبني	built	built
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
meet	يمًابل	met	met



### Read and loar

#### What is a time machine?



Ms Samira: OK, today we're going to do

something exciting. I want you to

imagine • that there's a science competition •. If you wanted to win a science competition, what would you invent • and why? You can work in groups to talk about your ideas, then

make a poster o about your invention.

0 تتخیل - تتصور

و مسابقهٔ

🛭 يېتكر - يخترع

🔾 مُلصَقِ (بوستر)

و يبحث على الإنترنت 🖯

🛈 يبحث في

🕡 آلة رمن

🕜 مصر القديمة



Ms Samira: Yes, you can. You can look in 6 magazines, too!

: Can we look online of for ideas?

#### Reem, Nagwa, and Lara work in a group.



Reem

Nagwa

: Well, if I entered a science competition, I'd design a time machine. I'd love to travel to a different time in history.



: That's a great idea. If you designed a time machine o,

where would you go?



: Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.



: If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt o! I'd

like to learn how they built the pyramids.



: I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time

machine. I'd go to the future to see what inventions

people have!



: Let's make our competition entry about a time machine, then! If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places. I think that idea would win the competition!

Nagwa

: OK, great. First, let's draw a picture. I wonder what a time machine would look like ...

# Grammar Study 📆



We use the second conditional to talk about a situation that is imaginary or unlikely to happen.

■ تُستخدم الحالة الثانية لـ (ff) للتعبير عن حدث خيالي أو غير محتمل حدوثه.

- If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt.
- If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places.



ماضي بسيط + if + المصدر + (d) + المصدر

- ▶ I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine.
- ▶ I would go to the future if I went on a time machine.

# Note that

heat

When the if clause is second, we don't use a comma.

لاحظ أننا لا نستخدم (٫) عندما تكون (if) في منتصف الجملتين.

### Exercises on Lesson (2)





Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



'd invent – 'd put on – flew – fly – invent – invented – wanted – would - would take

Yehya: Hi, Asser. Are you enjoying our school project about inventions?

Asser: Yes, I am. It's really interesting.

Yehya: So Asser, if you o a new form of transportation,

what @ ..... it be?

Asser : I ⊚ a flying jacket. If you o to meet

your friends in the park, you go your jacket and fly

there.

Yehya: Cooi! But isn't that dangerous?

Asser: No, don't worry. A computer would control the jacket. If you

too high, the computer vou

down. Everyone could have one!

Yahya : It sounds fun!

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

machine - inventions - time - history - competition

Reem: Well, if I entered a science o , I'd design a time

machine. I'd love to travel to a different time in @

Nagwa: That's a great idea. If you designed a time o , where

would you go?

Lara: Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.

Reem: If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt! I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.

Nagwa: I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine. I'd go to the future to see what o people have!

Lara: Let's make our competition entry about a machine, then! If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places. I think that idea would win the competition!

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. If I (enter entered) a science competition, I (would design designed) a robot to clean my room.
- 2. Asser (wouldn't didn't) use a magazine if he (want wanted) to find ideas for a competition.
- 3. (Would you Did you) go to Ancient Egypt if you (had have) a time machine?
- 4. If we (wouldn't didn't) enter the competition, we (wouldn't don't) win a prize!
- 5. If I (stop stopped) eating junk food, I (lost would lose) some weight.
- If I (enter entered entering) a science competition, I'd design a time machine.
- 7. If you traveled in time, who would you (taking take takes) with you?
- 8. Where (will could can) you go if you had a car that could go anywhere?
- 9. I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I (going go went) in a time machine.
- 10. If we (makes make make) a time machine, we could go to so many different places.



#### Unit 7

- 11. I (will can would) go to the future if I went on a time machine.
- 12. If you (designed designing design) a time machine, where could you go?
- 13. What questions would you ask them if you (met meet meeting) a person from the past?
- 14. If you wanted to win a science competition, what could you (inverted inventing invent)?
- 15. If I (have has had) a flying car, I could travel all around the world!

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. think would win that idea I competition the!

  2. is time a What machine?
- ?
- 3. You in groups to your ideas can work talk about.
- 4. we for look Can ideas online?
- > .....

5. to - a different time - in history - travel to - I'd love.



# Lessons 3-4

# Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





sea life الحياة البحرية



angelfish الشمكة الملائكية (سمكة مياه عذبة)



sea turtle . سلحفاة بحرية



coral reef الشعاب المرجانية



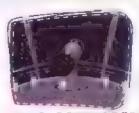
driverless / ذاتية القيادة (بدون سائق)



interactive ، تفاعلی



control يتحكم



planetarium قبة سماوية

pop	experiments تُفَرْقِع	تجارب
click	interviewer تُطَفُظِق	مُحاور- مذيع
noises	<b>material</b> فوضاء	مادة

science museum	متحف العلوم	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
scientist	مالد	anywhere	أي مكان
exhibition	معرض	guide	<u>مُر</u> شد
robots	روبوتات - أجهزة آلية	watch (n)	ساعة يد
amazement	دهشة - انبهار	space	الفضاء

300.00					
Ad	10	A F	i i i	1	
The second				100	200

smooth	curious ، ناعه - أملس	فضولي
waterproof	excited مقاوم للمياه	متحمس
healthy	special	خاص - مميز

### Prepositions

sounds like	تبدو كأنها	up in the sky	دلمساا يمن ليّالد
under the water	تحت الماء	got on the bus	ركبوا الحافلة
covered in	مغطی ہ	on the way	في الطريق
similar to	مشابه لـ	in the future	في المستقبل
different from	مختلف عن	will be able to	سیکون قادرًا علب
filled with stars	ممتلئة بالنحوم	talk about	پتکلم عن
look down	ينظر لأسفل	into the air	في الهواء

# Sentences & Expressions

do a school pro	oject	at the museum	
	يقوم بمشروع مدرسي		في المتحف
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	fly high	بطيز عاليًا
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	Excuse me	معذرة
Let's go	لنذهب	I'd prefer to	أَفْضًل أن

# Vocabulary Study SB Student's

driverless : something without a driver

interactive: something you can touch and move

planetarium: a place where you can see stars and planets

control: to direct something or somebody

# Conjugation of verbs

# Regular verbs accinia visci

		Pur	
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
sound	تبدو	sounded	sounded
follow	تينع	followed	followed
fill :	ألما	filled	filled
allow .	تسمح	allowed	allowed
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted
prefer	يُفضِل	preferred	preferred
control	يتحكم	controlled	controlled
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
smile	مبتني	smiled	smiled
scare	يخيف	scared in	scared
pop	تُفَرْقِع	popped	popped
click	تُطَقُطِق	clicked	clicked

# أفعال عبر مسطعة عصورة الاعتادة العامة ال

		Pilk	
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
smell	مشي	smelt (smelled)	smelt (smelled)
say	يقول	said	said
think	يفكر - <b>يعتقد</b>	thought	thought
fly	يطير	flew	flown
swim	تست	swam	swum



# Activity Book Text

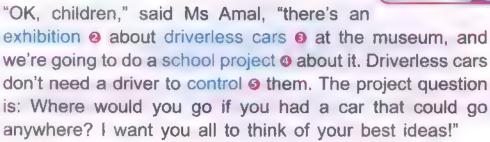
#### **Dr Amin's invention**

Dr Amin is a scientist who has invented • a special camera. The camera can take photos under the water. It's called Fish Camera because it looks like a real angelfish •. It doesn't scare the fish and other sea life. It feels like a fish because it's covered in smooth, waterproof • material. And it sounds like a fish because it makes noises like them. It clicks • and pops •! Fish Camera can show scientists how healthy the coral reefs • are.

- 🚺 اخترع ابتکر
- السمكة الملائكية (نوع من الأسماك)
  - مقاوم للماء مضاد للماء
    - वेववर्ष 🕢
      - 🖯 تُفَرَقِع
- الشعاب المرجانية

#### A trip to the science museum

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the school trip to the science museum •, and they couldn't wait. They all got on the bus.



The children chatted on the way. "That's easy," said Wael, "I'd fly high up in the sky, and look down at everything!"



- 🕦 متحف العلوم
  - 🕢 معرض
- القيارات ذاتية القيادة
- 🚺 مشروع مدرسي
  - نتحكم 😉

Fares said, "I'd prefer to go underwater, to see the animals that live in the sea."

Mazen was quiet. He thought if he could go anywhere, he wouldn't go up in the sky, or underwater. Where would he go?

The science museum was amazing. Mazen, Fares, and Wael were in a group with six other students, and a guide 6 called Mr Kamal. He showed them around and answered lots of questions. Mazen listened as he thought about the project.

و مرشد

سلدافة 🕜

الحياة اليومية

و لاحظ

🕦 فضولي

First, the children went to an interactive of exhibition about 🛈 قبة فلكية (سماوية)

robots. There were lots of experiments to try there. Then

🟚 مليئة د - ممتلئة د

they got to the exhibition about driverless cars.

🚯 في ڏهول - في دهشة

"I know there are some driverless cars now," said Mr Kamal, "but this one is special. We can't use it in everyday life 9 yet, but in the future, this car will be able to fly and swim," he said.

"So, I could go into the air!" said Wael.

"And I could go under the water," said Fares.

"It sounds amazing," said Mazen. But he still didn't know where he would go.

The other students looked at the car and talked about what it could do. Mazen noticed o a large door in the exhibition room. He was curious o. Mazen spoke to Mr Kamal. "Excuse me, what's through that door?" he asked.

Mr Kamal smiled. "That's the planetarium . Have you ever been inside a planetarium?"

"No," said Mazen.

Mr Kamal looked at his watch. "We have time. Let's all go and see!" he said.

He opened the door, and Mazen and the other students followed him inside. They saw a dark room, filled with 🛭 stars. Everybody looked n amazement @ as they saw stars and planets high above them.

"This is awesome!" said Mazen. "Now I know where I'd go. I'd go into space if I had a driverless flying car!"

# Activity Book Text

# The next school trip

Ms Amal spoke to the class.

"Hello, children. I hope you enjoyed the school trip to the science museum • yesterday. I'd like you to talk about your ideas in different groups.

Then I want you to choose one idea that is your favorite."

Mona, Dalia, and Fareeda were in a group together.

"Mona, where would you go if you had a car that could go anywhere?" asked Fareeda.

"I'd go to the top of @ Mount Sinai @, I use a wheelchair, so I can't hike up @ a mountain. If I flew to the top of the mountain, it would be amazing."

"That's a great idea, Mona," said Dalia. "If I went anywhere, I'd fly over 6 the Nile. I'd see crocodiles and other wildlife."

"That sounds a lot of fun," said Mona. "What about you, Fareeda?"

"I'd go under the water in the Red Sea. If I went under the water, I'd see lots of different sea life. I'd see turtles swimming under the water and lots of colorful @ fish."

"Wow! We'd like that too," said Mona and Dalia. "Let's do that!"

The three friends decided that was the best choice in their group.

🕕 متحف العلوم

قمة 😉

و جبل سيناء

أتسلق 4

اً أطير مُوق،

ا مُلَوْن

# hole that



- We use (looks / feels / sounds / smells / tastes + like) when we want to say that something is similar to something else.
  - التعبير عن (looks / feels / sounds / smells / tastes + like) للتعبير عن التشابه بين شيئين.
  - lt's called Fish Camera because it looks like a real angelfish.
  - lt sounds like a fish because it makes noises like them.
- (look, feel, sound, smell, and taste) are verbs that we usually use to describe things we experience with our senses.
  - الأشياء التي نتفاعل معها بحواسنا.

#### Exercises on Lessons





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



Activity

coral reefs - feels - looks - sea life - sounds - waterproof

Dr Amin is a scientist who has invented a special camera. The camera can take photos under the water. It's called Fish Camera because it

like a real angelfish. It doesn't scare the fish and other

It 6 like a fish because it's covered

in smooth, o material. And it o like a

fish because it makes noises like them. It clicks and pops! Fish Camera can show scientists how healthy the o are.

2

### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### interactive - planetarium - cars - exhibition - driverless

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### control - underwater - flying - space - driverless

Ms Amal : OK, children, this is the driverless cars exhibition that we're

going to do a school project about.

Mazen : What are 0 ...... cars?

Ms Amal : Driverless cars don't need a driver to 9 them.

Where would you go if you had a car that could go

anywhere?

Was : That's easy! I'd fly high up in the sky, and look down at

everything!

Fares : I'd prefer to go 6 . . . to see the animals that live

in the sea.

Mazen : It sounds amazing! I'd go into o if I had a

driverless flying car!

Ms Amal : OK, children! This is Mr Kamal. He is our guide here.

Mr Kamal: Hello, children. I'll show you around and answer lots of your

questions.

	Lessons	3-4
Put the words in the correct order to make ser	ntences:	
1. go - to - exhibition - an - The children - interactive.		
2. camera - Where - photos - does - the - take?		
3. and - see - a driverless - Mazen - car - his friends.	?	
> > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > >	fibrican B	
4. can - The camera - take - the water - photos - under.	## <b>0</b> #000000 <b>V</b>	
5. is - Invention - Dr Amin's - What?	?	
Write an email of (70) words to your friend Yas	ser:	
Tell him about the visit your class made to the science him what you saw and what you liked best there. Your enhani@gmail.com and your friend's email address is yassi	mail addre	ss is
From.		-

To:

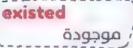
Subject:

# Lesson 5

# Language

# الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary







toothpaste معجون أسنان



paste معجون



plow مِحراث



pain ألم



mint دنعناع



ink בָּוִן



engines محرکات

Extra V	ocabulary	The real li	
Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين	modern world	العالم الحديث
sign : .	علامة - دلالة	events	أحداث ' ثاماً
human body	جسم الإنسان	type	نوع
diseases	أمراض	farming	الزراعة
decisions	قرارات	thick	سميك
machines	آلات ٔ	teli stories	يحكم (پروي) قصص
calendars	تقاويم	almost	تقریبًا ،

medicine	papyrus دواء	ورق البردي
herbs	باشداً reeds	قصب - ہوص
salt	wood ملح	حشب
pepper	soil فلفل (أسود)	ترية
oil	تين <mark>metal</mark>	معدنت

# Prepositions

come from	made from تأتي من	مصنوع من
write down	ın the past يُدَوُّن - يكتب	ضي الماضي
thousands of years	interested in آلاف السنين	مهتم ب

# **Fonjugation of verbs**

# Regular verbs منظمه

	1	th the	
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
record	يُسجِل	recorded	recorded
turn	بِلْقُلْب - يَقْلَبُ	turned	turned
pull	تسحن	pulled	pulled
change	يُغير	changed	changed
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
create	يبتكر	created	created
move	يحرك	moved	moved

### أفعال غير منتظمة معالم أفعال أدام

© Presénto		CO PINTO	A PARTY IN
dig	يحفر	dug	dug
keep	يُحافظ	kept	kept
burn	يحرق	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)
understand	مفهم	understood	understood





#### What did the Ancient Egyptians invent? by اعزَرِ المضريين: المضري

We think our modern world ① is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed ② for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention! For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs ③ to stop pain ④ and diseases.

🚺 عالمنا الحديث 🧿 كانت موجودة 🔞 أعشاب 🗿 ألم · وَجَع



Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of toothpaste ③. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint ③, and pepper into a paste ②. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as good as modern toothpaste!

쥥 معجون الأسنان 🧿 نعناع 🕜 معجون

- [=]

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down 3 decisions, record 9 events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink 6. Papyrus 0 was a type of thick 2 paper made from reeds 3. It wasn't as smooth 3 as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

🔞 يُذَوِّن - يكتب 🤨 يُسَجِّل 🐧 جير 🕦 ورق البردي 👂 سميك 🦫 البوص 🦺 ناعم



The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal plow . A plow was used to dig and turn the soil. Later, they used animals to pull this plow. This made plowing the land easier, but it wasn't as easy as it is today. Now, farmers use machines with engines to move their plows.

🗗 مِحراث 🍪 يجرّ - پسحب 🗗 خرث - جراثة 🚯 محركات

# Grammar Study



The affirmative form of (as .... as) means that the two things we are comparing are the same in some way.

تُعَبِّر (as ..... as) في حالـة الإثبات عن التساوي في الصفة، وتوضع الصفة كما هي يعدون إضافات.

#### Example:

Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as good as modern toothpaste!

It means: (Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was good, and modern toothpaste is good, too.)

#### Unit 7

The negative form of (as .... as) means that the two things we are comparing are different.

تُعَبِّر (as .... as) في حالة النفي على أن الطرف الثاني في المقارنة يزيد عن الطرف الأول في الصفة المستخدمة.

#### Examples:

- O It wasn't as easy as it is today. (It was hard then, but it is easier now.)
- O Sara isn't as tall as Hala. = Hala is taller than Sara.
- O I'm not as old as my father. 

  My father is older than me.

# Exercises on Lessen



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

existed - Egyptians - sign - medicine - inventions

We think our modern world is full of exciting new 0

However, the Ancient were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions

today. They've 6 for thousands of years. That's the

of a good invention!

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

engines - pull - soil - farmers - plow

The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal • . A plow was used to dig and turn the

2 . Later, they used animals to 6 this plow.

This made plowing the land easier, but it wasn't as easy as it is today.

Now, farmers use machines with 
to move their plows.

#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### communicated - ink - record - smooth - papyrus

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the



#### Choose the correct answer:

1. Spring (is - isn't) as hot as the summer.

AB

2. Villages (are - aren't) as busy as cities.

- AB
- 3. Fares is funny. Nadia is funny, too. Fares (is isn't) as funny as Nadia. AB
- 4. Paper (is isn't) as expensive as computers.

- AB
- 5. The roads in Ancient Egypt (were weren't) as busy as they are today. [A B]
- 6. Sherif is ten and his cousin is ten. Sherif (is isn't) as old as his cousin.
- 7. There (were weren't) as many people in Ancient Egypt as there are today.
- 8. Mrs Amal's apartment (is isn't) as modern as ours. Both apartments are in the same building.
- 9. Mariam's idea was as good (like as to) ours, so we both won the prize!
- 10. Farming in the past wasn't (as easy easy as easy as) it is now.
- 11. Papyrus (isn't were weren't) as smooth as paper.
- 12. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as (good good as as good) modern toothpaste!

0.0			The same of
v	nı	1	

- 13. Ancient Egyptians were (than as to) interested in health and medicine as we are today.
- 14. It wasn't as (easy easier easiest) as it is today.
- 15. I think ink is as (useful useful as mos ) paper.
- 16. Toothpaste is as (older oldest ( ) as herbs.
- 17. Ancient Egyptian inventors were ( - ) inventors today.
- 18. Farming was as (more important in ) as it is today.

# 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. did Ancient the What invent Egyptians?
- 2. understood They how worked the human body.
- 3. Egyptians wanted clean to A keep.
- 4. was difficult Farming in past the.
- 5. Egyptian were Ancient clever inventors.

# Lesson 6 William / Labellon to in problem

# الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





solution



problem



seabin

جهاز لتنقية المياه



The Ocean Net شكة لالتقاط القمامة من الماء



trapped عالق - محتجَز

۰ مشکلة



effect

؛ تأثير



حل

chip bags

أكياس رقائق البطاطس (شيبسب)



recycled

معاد تدویرها

sea life sea animals

sea birds

jellyfish

turtles

يصل إلى المحيط get into the ocean الحياة البحرية

bad for the environment

حيوانات بحرية

سيماً بالنسبة للبيئة - ضار بالبيئة

beaches طیور بحریة

شواطمأ

trash قنديل البحر

قمامة

pollution سلاحف بحرية

تلۇث

reasons	أسباب	bucket	دلو
objects	أشياء	pump	مضخة
straws	<u>شفاطات</u> أ	fuel	وقود
cardboard	ورق مقوى - كرتون	horrible	فْبيحة - بشعة
sick	مريض	made up of	تتكون من 

# Activity Book

	electricity	كهرباء	high levels	مستويات عالية
	fossil fuels	وقود حفري	climate change	تُغَيَّر مناخي
	coal	فحم	train platform	رصيف القطار
	oil	بترول	interactive	سلدلفت
	gas	إغاز	floor tiles	بلاط أرضيات
	greenhouse gases مُسَئِية للاحتياس الحراري)	غازات الدفيئة (الـ	turn into	يتحول إلى
ļ	carbon dioxide 09	أثاني أكسيد انكرر	scared of	خاتُفِ من

# Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs منظمه المعال منظمه

5	Product		A
filter	مُصِمَّ - شَوَبًا	filtered	filtered
look	يبدو - ينظر	looked	looked
sort	نَفَيْمَيْ	sorted	sorted
recycle	זאד ברפור	recycled	recycled
include	يشمل - يُضَمَّن	included	included
create	يُنشئ	created	created
cause	rimi	vi caused	caused
store	ً يخزن	stored	stored *

Present		A CHILL	A DIN
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt
catch	يلتقط	caught	caught

# How to write a solution to a problem

- When you write a solution to a problem, you need to include reasons. Your reasons show the reader why your solution is a good one.
- عندما تكتب حلاً لمشكلة ما، عليك أن تذكر الأسباب. تُوَضِّح أسبابك للقارئ سبب كَوْن الحل الذب تقدمه جيدًا،
- Introduce your reasons with Firstly, Secondly, etc.

قدَّم أسبابك باستخدام Firstly, Secondly وما إلى ذلك.

Log in

Other phrases you can use are: it helps, it stops, it's good for... it helps, it stops, it's good for... :هناك عبارات أخرى يمكنك استخدامها مثل



#### NEWS

Upload

Download

- We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad (السلاحف المائية (البحرية عمر المعربة)
- effect on sea life o: turtles o, fish, and jellyfish o, for example. Some animals think the plastic is
- food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get trapped 6 in the plastic and are hurt.
- Plastic in our water is also bad for the environment.

A lot of plastic pollution 6 is washed onto 6 beaches, which looks horrible. If there wasn't so much plastic pollution, the seas and beaches would be safer for the sea animals @ and for us, too.

- و الحياة (الأحياء) البحرية
- - 🐠 قناديل البحر
    - 🗗 ئغنى
    - 6 التلوث
  - 🕡 تجرفها المياه إلى
  - 🔞 الحيوانات البحرية



The Ocean Net 9 is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great solution to the problem of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of reasons. Firstly 10, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds 10 are not hurt.

Secondly P, it's also good for the environment. It catches

plastic objects: drink bottles D, chip D bags, and plastic

straws . These plastic objects can then be sorted .

and recycled . This means that we use less plastic.

As you can see, the Ocean Net is a great invention!

😉 شىكة

Noi de

🛈 انظيور البحرية

ne Ocean N

النيا 🖭

😉 زجاجات المشروبات

🚹 رقائق البطاطس

🗗 الشفاطات البلاستبكية

الله تُفرز

🕏 يُعاد تدويرها

## Activity Book Text

#### Problem

Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels 1 like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases 2, like methane 3. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause climate change @ and air pollution.

### Special floor vites 🚺 وقود حفری

عَارَاتَ الدَّفَيْتُةُ

اغاز الميثلق: ﴿ وَالْمُوالِينَا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّ 🐠 تغير المناخ

و بلاط أرصيات

🕝 خُزْنت

رماعلي 🕜

#### Solution

A company has created special floor tiles 6 which create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored 6. Now the tiles are used in 36 countries around the world to create energy in different places: on train platforms, and in places where people play football. As a result, the energy is clean, it's interactive o, and it's fun to create!

### Exercises on Lesson 6





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



#### trapped - catches - recycled - beaches - eat

Plastic in our oceans is bad because animals sometimes of the plastic or get @ in it. It also causes pollution . The Ocean Net is good because it stops on o plastic from getting into the sea. The plastic in the net can be sorted and

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

environment – problems – trapped – ocean – effect

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the 
and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get 
in the plastic and are hurt. Plastic in our water is also bad for the ...

### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

asons — problem — sorted — chip — solution

The Ocean Net is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great o to the @ of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of o . Firstly, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds are not hurt. Secondly, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects: bags, and plastic straws. These plastic objects can then be sorted and recycled. This means that we use less plastic.

	4	Read and	complete	the tex	t with th	ne words	from ti	ne box
-								

#### climate - gases - fuels - creates - dioxide

Many countries still make electricity using fossil • ..... like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels • .... carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like methane. However, greenhouse • .... are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause • ..... change and air pollution.

# Punctuate these sentences with a colon (:), commas (,), and a period (.):



- We saw lots of things at the art exhibition paintings sculptures murals and mozaics
- 2. The river was full of plastic pollution chip packages water bottles and food containers
- 3. There are many forms of renewable energy wind solar wave and water
- 4. We can do things to stop plastic pollution reduce reuse and recyle

### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. use in our plastic We lives everyday.
- 2. can have on sea life a very Plastic bad effect.
- 3. Net is invention a special The Ocean.
- 4. solution The Seabin interesting is an.



Read the problem and solution below. Write about the problem and solution:



- Explain what is bad about the problem. Is it dangerous or bad for nature?
- Explain what is good about the solution. Is it natural, easy, or slean?
- Include colons for lists.
- Link your ideas with: Now, As a result, and However.

#### Problem

In Kenya, some elephants go into farms and eat the farmers' crops. Some farmers want to hurt the elephants.

#### (Debution)

Elephants are big and powerful animals, but they are scared of bees. Keep bees in the fields.



### Lesson / Stery: Feeding the birds

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary











birdfeeders / صناديق إطعام الطيور

birdseed ر حبوب للطيور

clothes pins / مشابك الملابس

gatepost عمود تثبيت البوابة







rope

ز حیل

knot ا عُقدة loop

خلقة

Extinu	B-20 - 1.100	
The second second		

yard	neighbor فناء - حديقة	جار
outside	slowly بالخارج	ببطء .
garage	(sink (n جراج - مرأب	حوض
gate	<b>branch</b> بوابة	فرع - غصن

#### Sentences Expressions

sat on a chair	of course جلس علم کرسي	بالطبع
walk with a stick	look out of يمشي مستندًا على عصا	ينظر من
the other way	top part الجانب الآخر	الجانب العلوي
for a while	decided to لمترة من الوقت	قرر أن

aiblli

### **Activity Book**

ciay plant pots	أواني من الفخار للنبات <mark>ات</mark>	creative	مُبدع - مبتكِر
protection	حماية :	empty	فارغ - خالى
flat stones	حجارة مسطحة (مستوية)	we'll be away	سنكون مسافرين

### Vocabulary Study S B Activity

creative : using the imagination to produce new ideas

vegetable : a healthy food that can be grown in the garden

cover : to place or put something over an object for protection

: a verb to describe pouring or sprinkling water

### Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs معالم المعال معالم المعالم المع

	A from the		Z.		
water		يروى - يسقى		watered	watered
pick u	ıp	يلتقط		picked up	picked up
attacl	1	يربط		attached	attached
pull		تسحن		pulled	pulled
tie		يربط		tied	tied
decid	Э	يقرر		decided	decided
worry		يقلق		worried	worried
cover	r	بُغطي		covered	covered
plant		يزرع		planted	planted
produ	ce ;::\	يُنتِج ,		produced	produced -
place	پ مکان) 🗈	یضع (شیء م		placed	placed

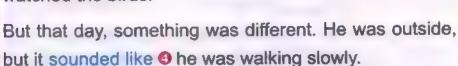
### irregular verbs مُنْ مُنْ الْمُعَالِ عُيْرِ مِنْ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِ الْمُعَالِينِ الْمُعَالِينِ

O Present	a .	ACTION !	A PR
feed	يُطعم	fed	fed
hear	ह्यमा	heard	heard
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
sit down	يجلس	sat down	sat down
fly	يطير	flew	flown
grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew	grown
dig	يحفر	dug	dug



# Story: Feeding the birds

One morning, Rania was in her yard 0. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled 2 his birdfeeders 3. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds.



Rania went and asked her mom, "Is Mr Hamdy OK? He isn't feeding 6 the birds."



- 0 فناء حديقة
  - و ملأ
- و مناديق إطعام الطيور
  - 🔾 بدا وكأنه
    - و يُطعِم
      - lps ()

"Mr Hamdy hurt his leg," said Mom. "He's OK, but he needs to walk with a stick 6. I think it's difficult for him to fill his birdfeeders. I'm making some koshari for his lunch. Can you take it to him later?"

"Of course," said Rania. She thought about Mr Hamdy. He loved feeding the birds, and she was sad that he couldn't. Rania looked out of

the window. She decided to help Mr Hamdy. She got some pencils and paper, and sat down at her desk to draw her ideas.

و جاليا

🚱 مشابك ملايس

🛭 حوض

A few hours later, Mom called Rania. "Mr Hamdy's koshari is ready," she said.

ी क्षेत्रक कुछः क्षेत्रक क्षेत्रक

Rania picked up her paper. She asked, "Have we got

وطلهما 📵

any rope of and clothes pins o?"

🚯 بوانو معدنتو

"What for?" asked Mom.

📵 عمود (قائم) تثبیت البوابة

"To make something," Rania replied.

آلطت عَفِدقِ
 هما حلقة

Mom said "Thora are slother nice ....

🕏 تحرکت تجاه (ناحیة)؛

Mom said, "There are clothes pins under the sink on and rope in the garage. Do you need any help?"

🚯 حبوب للظيور 🖹

"No, thanks, I know what to do," said Rania. She got the rope, the clothes pins, and the koshari, and went next door.

🚯 پُخرن - تسحنی

"I'm sorry you hurt your leg," she said. "Mom made you some lunch. Did you feed the birds today?" "Thank you," said Mr Hamdy. "I won't be able to walk very well for a while. So, I couldn't feed the birds today. I'm worried that they might go somewhere else for food."

"May I make something in your yard?" asked Rania. "I want to help feed the birds." "Of course, dear," he said.

Outside, Rania threw one end of the rope over the branch of a tree . She took two birdfeeders from the tree, and attached them to the rope with clothes pins. Next to Mr Hamdy's chair, there was a metal gate . Rania put the rope around the gatepost , and tied a knot to make one big loop . She pulled the rope, first the part above the knot, and then the part below it. The birdfeeders moved towards her when she pulled the top part. "It works!" she said.

She called Mr Hamdy. "Please, sit here," she said.

"This looks interesting, Rania," said Mr Hamdy, smiling.

She gave him some birdseed @ and showed him where to pull on @ the rope to make the birdfeeders move:

Mr Hamdy smiled as he sat in the sun and filled the birdfeeders. When they were ready, Rania helped him pull the rope the other way. The birdfeeders went high up, close to the branches of the tree. The birds flew 4 onto the branches and started to eat.

"Thank you, Rania," he said. "Your invention is fantastic! I can rest and still enjoy the birds."

# Activity Book Text

### What does Rania's mom want help with?

The next day, Rania was in the kitchen with her mom.

"I really enjoyed making the birdfeeder for Mr Hamdy, Mom," said Rania.

"You have lots of good ideas, Rania. You're very creative 0. Can you help me solve a problem? We're going to stay with your

grandparents tomorrow and we'll be away for a week. Your father has planted some vegetables 2 in the garden, but who will water 9 them? We can't ask Mr Hamdy."

Rania thought for a few moments and then she said, "I've got an idea!"

Rania found four clay plant pots in the garden. Each pot had a hole in the bottom. Then she found four small stones and four bigger flat stones. She went inside and got some glue, and brought her mom into the garden.

"Look, Mom," she said. Rania put some glue on each small stone and put them inside the plant pots to cover the holes. Then she put the plant pots deep into the soil between the vegetables in the garden. She filled the pots with water and covered 4 them with the flat stones and soil.

"What are you doing Rania? How will that help?" asked her mom.



D OJEZ

🔁 خضراوات

Chan 6

اعطاها



"The plant pots are made of clay, so the water will slowly go through the pots into the soil. When we come back next week, the pots will be empty and the vegetables will be green and healthy," explained Rania.

"Rania, what a clever idea! Your father will be so pleased! Thank you," said her mom.

### Exercises on Lesson





#### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### idea - creative - planted - pots - solve

Rania: I really enjoyed making the birdfeeder for Mr Hamdy, Mom.

Mom : You have lots of good ideas, Rania. You're very 0

Rania: Thank you, Mom.

Mom : Can you help me 

a problem?

a problem?

Rania : Sure. What is it?

Mom : Your father has planted some vegetables in clay 6

in the garden, but nobody waters them.

Rania: I've got an 4 ! Don't worry, mom.

Mom : Your father will be so pleased! Thank you, Rania.

### Read the following text and answer the questions:

Every morning, Rania's neighbor, Mr Hamdy, filled his birdfeeders. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds. One day, Mr Hamdy didn't feed the birds. "Mr Hamdy hurt his leg. It's difficult for him to fill his birdfeeders," said Rania's mom. Rania wanted to help Mr Hamdy feed the birds. Later, Rania took Mr Hamdy some koshari from her mom. She took a rope and some clothes pins. Outside, Rania threw the rope over the branch of a tree. She tied two birdfeeders to the rope with clothes pins. Rania put the rope around the gatepost, and tied



#### Unit 7

a knot to make one big loop. She <u>pulled</u> the rope, first the part above the knot, and then the part below it. The birdfeeders moved towards her. "It works!" she said. Rania showed Mr Hamdy how to pull on the rope to make the birdfeeders move. Soon, the birds flew onto the branches and started to eat.



#### Choose the correct answer:

- Every morning, Rania's neighbor, Mr Hamdy, filled his (birdseeds gatepost - birdfeeders).
- 2. Rania wanted to help Mr Hamdy (feed cook eat) the birds.
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "pulled" is (caught pushed threw).



#### **Answer these questions:**

- 4. Why is it difficult for Mr Hamdy to fill his birdfeeders?
- 5. What food did Rania take to Mr Hamdy?

### 3

#### Put the words to make correct sentences:

- does Rania to eat take - to Mr Hamdy?
- 2. the birds . feeding loved.
- 3. you any need help Do?
- 4. around Rania put gatepost the rope the.
- 5. does mom Rania's Why koshari make?

?





#### Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6M5)

#### نص الاستماع موحود آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Drinking dirty water can cause (protection prevention disease cure).
- 2. Dirty water has a lot of (vitamins viruses fats bacter.a) in it.
- 3. We can store fresh food in a (cooker refrigerator microwave oven).
- 4. To (prevent damage destroy harm) yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water.
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

#### invent - dangerous - flying - jacket - inventions

Yehya: Hi, Asser. Are you enjoying our school project about

0 .....?

Asser : Yes, it's really interesting.

Yehya: So, if you invented a new form of transportation, what would

it be?

Asser : I would invent a @ jacket.

Yehya : Cool! But isn't that 
?

Asser : No, don't worry. A computer would control the

Yehya : It sounds fun!

Asser : Of course it is.



### Read the following text and answer the questions:

14/161

Thomas Edison was a great scientist and an inventor. He invented many things. One of his inventions is the light bulb. As a child, Edison didn't enjoy going to school. When he was only seven, the headmaster asked him to leave school because he didn't do his school work. So he stayed at home. His mother taught him the most important things and encouraged him to read a lot about science. Edison couldn't buy the books he needed because he was poor. So, at twelve he began to self newspapers and



#### Unit 7

sweets in trains to get money. Thank God for inventors like Edison or we would still be using oil lamps and candles to read in the dark.

## Choose the correct answer: 1. Edison invented the (candle - or Line -When Edison was only seven, the headmaster asked him to ( come - get to - learn) school The opposite of the underlined word poor is ( - creative). Answer these questions: 4. What did Edison do to get money? 5. How was his mother helpful to him? The Reader News Team (4Ms) A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (2Ms) 1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good cousins. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper. Hatem read everybody's writing, and checked with the teacher. 4. Tarek was the arts journalist. Read and answer the questions:

5. When did the children have the idea to produce a newspaper together?

6. What was Hatem's job?



(2Ms)

8	Choose	the	correct	answer:
	0110000	F4 4 F4	0011001	-

(3Ms)

- 2. Spring isn't as ( notter hottest as) summer.
- 3. If you went to Ancient Egypt, you could (knows knowing knew know) how they built ships.
- 4. The Ancient Egyptians were (as shood good as as better best as) as modern people at inventing new things.
- 5. If I visited Sharm El-Sheikh on vocation, I (can will would was) swim in the sea.
- 6. Papyrus wasn't ( \rangle oth as smooth as less smooth) the paper we use today.

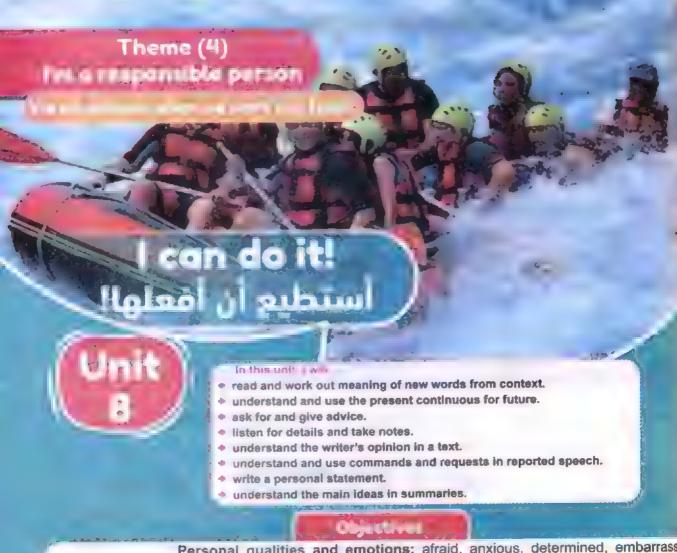
### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

- 1. of fish the does ... look like camera?
- 2. environment - is the good for.
- 3. planetarium the inside is?
- Write a paragraph of ( ) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

#### ideas to help you:

- When did you go? With whom?
- What did you do and see there?





Vocabulary	Personal qualities and emotions: afraid, anxious, determined, embarrassed independent, patient Phrases using take: take part, take time, take turns, take an interest Words from the story: scouts, oasis, ripped/rip (v), blew/blow (v), leader
Language	Present continuous for future arrangements: My grandma is sick, so next well I'm doing her shopping.  Reported commands and requests: My teacher told me to try again.  She asked me to help her with her homework.
Reading	A quiz about personal qualities and feelings; emails; a factual article about teamwork; a poem; a story about a scouts adventure
Writing	Writing a personal statement, including subheadings and details
Speaking	Giving advice
Listening	Listening to advice in dialogs
Life skills	Self-management: learning to be part of a team

integrated cross-

Citizenship

Values Issues and Tolerance and acceptance of others

untegrated crosscornection topics Social studies: understanding the value of collaborating with others

### Lesson 1

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس الكلمات الأساسية في





anxious / قلق - متوتر



determined ر عازم - مُصِرّ



صبور



afraid / خائف - مرعوب



embarrassed ً، محرَج - مرتبك



independent ً، مستقل

	Extra Vecabular	Call	كلمات إضاة	
quiz	اختبار قصير	aquarium	- حوض سمك	معرض أحياء مائية
presentation	عرض تقديمي	movie thea	ter (	دار عرض سينمائم
results	نتائج	try hard		یحاول بجد
instead	بدلاً - <b>عوضًا</b> 	find solutio	ns	يجد حلولًا
practice	يتدرب - يتمرن	text message		قيمانة نصية

practice	يتدرب - يتمرن	text message	رسالة نصية
calmly	نعدوء	space	مساحة
notes	ملاحظات	mind	عقل - ذهن
mostly	معظم - أغلب	person	، شخص
good grades	درجات جيدة	give advice	يقدم نصيحة

	• _	-41		Sub-
<b>PAd</b>	je	CEI	U.C	4.5

quiet	ھادىئ	wrong	خطأ
busy	مشغول	scary	مخيف
silly	سخيف	kind	طیب - عطوف
frightened	خائف - مذعور	nervous	متوتر
possible	ممكن	similar	متشابهة

## Prepositions

anxious about	متوتر من (شيء)	on your own	بمفردك
worried about	مَّلِق من (شيء)	wait for	ينتظر (شخصًا - شيئًا)
determined to do	عارم علم القيام بـ	go out	يخرج - يذهب خارجًا
afraid of	خائف من	for a long time	لفترة طويلة
embarrassed about	محرَج من (شيء)	for a week	لمدة أسبوع

### Vocabulary Study SB Student's

	Book 1
independent	: happy to do something on your own
determined	: believing that you will do or finish something
anxious	: worried or nervous about something
patient	: able to wait calmly for a long time
afraid	: scared or frightened of something
embarrassed	: worried about what other people think, or feeling bad about something you did or said

### Conjugation of perba

### Regular verbs مُنْشَمَة المُعَالُ مَنْشَمَة

imagine	ىتجىل	imagined	imagined
prepare	يُحَضِّر - يُجهِّر	prepared	prepared
practice	بتدرب	practiced	practiced
hope	پتمنی - یأمل	hoped	hoped
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
believe	يعتقد - يؤمن	believed	believed
finish	بهنؤ	finished	finished
agree	بوامق	agreed	agreed
disagree	، يرمض	disagreed	disagreed

### irregular verbs المعال البر منتظاها

(From			PO
find out	بكنشم	found out	found out
stick	يلصق	stuck	stuck
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
mean	הסת - הסתו	meant	meant

### Did you know?

مل تعلم؟

When you play sports, you're learning important teamwork skills. Teamwork skills can help you be successful in many other parts of your life, too.

عندما تمارس الرياضة، فإنك تتعلم مهارات العمل الحماعي المهمة. يمكن أن تساعدك مهارات العمل الحماعي على النجاح مي العديد من حوانب حناتك الأخرى كذلك.



#### What would you do?

- 1) Imagine your friend was quiet and sad for a week. What would you do?
- a) Write a text message or email to say that you are there if they want to talk.
- b) Ask questions to find out what's wrong.
- c) Give them some space, and wait for them to tell you the problem.
- Imagine your friend wanted to go to the movie theater of the day before your exam. What would you do?
- a) Say no, but look for a movie you can go to next weekend instead.
- b) Do lots of study now, so you can go out before the exam.
- c) Say that you're too busy.
- Imagine you were anxious e about giving a presentation in class.

  How would you prepare?
- a) Ask somebody to listen to you practice and give you advice.
- b) Watch videos of other people giving presentations to get some advice.
- c) Make lots of notes and stick sthem around your house to help you learn it.
- Imagine your friend wanted to visit the aquarium o, but you were afraid of fish. What would you do?
- a) Go with them, and hope the fish aren't as scary as you imagine!
- b) Say no, but don't tell them why. You don't want to look silly .
- c) Explain that you don't like fish, but you'd like to do something else.





Chain ale e

الصق) ﴿

🕙 معرض الأحياء المائية

و دائم

6 شخیماً

🕜 أجمق - سخيف

#### Your results!

Mostly a: You always try hard, and you're a good friend. You like to be with other people, and you want to make them happy.

9 تشعر بالإحراج

🛭 قوب الإرادة - عازم

🛈 صبور - حنیم

ال مستقل

Mostly b: You are a determined operson. You work hard to find solutions to problems, and you can feel embarrassed 9 easily.

Mostly c: You're patient ⊕ and independent ⊕ - you know your own mind. You're a good friend, and you're kind to yourself as well.

### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

understood – anxious – explained – patient – homework

Reem's dad was helping her with her math 0 difficult and Reem couldn't get the right answers. Her dad 9 it very slowly. He helped Reem for half an hour until Reem 6 Reem's dad was

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

independent – presentations – anxious – advice – prac

about giving a presentation in class. So, I watched l was 0 to get some ideas. I also videos of other people giving @ and give me . asked my mom to listen to me 6

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. do you be patient try and When?
  - ?
- 2. Youssef learning is a bike ride how to.
- 3. an you Are person independent?
- ?
- 4. is some cakes making a charity Injy for.
- 5. do you When anxious sometimes feel?
- 6. and I were the street down Mom walking.
- Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"A short story"

poor boy - studied hard - independent patient - businessman - successful - rich



#### 2

### Lesson 2

#### Language



#### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



store (n) متجر/



shopping رُ التسوقُ



restaurant osho



<mark>meal</mark> وجبة

#### Extra Vocabulary

المات إراقيان

better	بحال أفضل - أفصل	take photos	يلتقط صورًا
parents	الوائدان	far	بعتد
busy	مشغول	boat	قاړب - مرکب
surprise	مفاجأة	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
fun (adj)	ممتع	auntie	خالة - عمة

### Prepositions

at five o'clock	في تمام الساعة الخامسة	on vacation	في عُطلة - في إجازة
at home	مُي المنزل ميري	Thank you for	أشكرك على
by the sea	بجوار البحر	help with	شغ عداسيًا

### Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs institution jind

	OPHILING DA	NIT	A PROPERTY.
email	يُرسل بريدًا إلكترونيًا	emailed	emailed
stay	يمكث - يُقيم	stayed	stayed

#### Unit 8

,		(Trestate)	Part	M
	paint	يطلب - يلوَّن	painted	painted
	pack	يحزم	packed	packed

### أفعال عبر منتظمة عالم علام أفعال عبر منتظمة

Fresni			
make	بصنع	made	made
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
leave	ا يغادر	left	left
show	يعرض	showed	shown

# Read and learn



#### Hello Youssef,

How are you? The last time you emailed, you said your grandma was sick. I hope she's better now.

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making dinner this evening. My sisters are going to the store this منج والمنطقة والمن

What are you doing next week? And are you going on vacation this summer?

Write soon.

Yaseen



#### Hi Yaseen!

Thanks for your email, and I hope the cooking is fun! Thank you for asking about my grandma. She's OK, but I'm doing her shopping • tomorrow because she can't walk far yet.



لسقة،

I'm very excited because I'm staying with my cousins عطلة إجارة next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their boat - it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos and show them to you.

We aren't going on vacation 2 this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city. Are you going anywhere this summer?

See you soon,

Youssef

# Grammar Study

Prisant continuous (future in i المصارع المستمر (الترتيبات المستقبلية)

We use the present continuous to talk about things happening now. 🞩 نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أشياء تحدث الآن.

OI'm studying English now.

We can also use it to talk about arrangements in the future. كما يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أشياء مُخطط لهـا أو ترتيبات ف<del>ي</del>

المستقبل.

OI'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow.

#### Unit 8

- We often use a time phrase to show when this will happen. Time phrases include:
  - العبارات الزمنية مثل: الزمنية لبيان وقت حدوث الفعل في المستقبل. العبارات الزمنية مثل:

(later, tomorrow, this evening, at five o'clock, next week, next month)

### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### meal - busy - surprise - parents - store

My parents are very this week, so I'm making dinner this evening. My sisters are going to the this afternoon to buy the food we need. Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' this afternoon.

It's hawawshi! It will be a this afternoon.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### vacation - awesome - staying - boat - shopping

I'm doing my grandma's • . tomorrow because she can't walk far. I'm very excited because I'm • with my cousins next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their — it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos. We aren't going on • this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city.

# Complete the text with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets:



,	
Jumana 🐧 .	(stay) with her grandparents next week.
She @	(leave) next Thursday and she's very excited.
Her grandpar	rents live in the city and they have planned a lot of things to
do. They 6	(go) to a restaurant for dinner on the first night.
They o	(visit) the museum the next day. Her grandparents
live next to	a big park, so on Sunday they 🧿 (have)
a picnic with h	ner aunts, uncles, and cousins. Jumana 6 (pack)
her bags this	evening. She doesn't want to forget anything!

### (4) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (Was Is Are) Reem looking after her little brother tomorrow?
- 2. We (were is are) helping our parents next weekend.
- Hana (is isn't wasn't) going on vacation next week. She's staying at home.
- 4. Yaseen's sisters (am is are) going to the store.
- 5. (Am Is Are) you staying with your grandma?
- 6. I'm (making makes make) cookies for my friend later.
- 7. Our cousins are (coming came comes) here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city.
- 8. Youssef is (visit visiting visited) his cousins.
- 9. Are you (goes going go) anywhere this summer?
- 10. What are you doing (last past next) week?
- 11. Who is Jumana (stay stayed staying) with next week?
- 12. Where are you going (last week yesterday tomorrow)?
- 13. When is Youssef (help helping helps) to paint a boat?

#### Unit 8

- 14. I (was cooking am cooking cooks) my parents' favorite meal tomorrow.
- 15. They (sta, we see thing are staying) with their grandparents next week.
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
  - 1. is Yaseen When meal cooking the?
  - 2 on vacation aren't going We summer this.
  - 3. the weekend What doing are you on?
    - ?
  - 4. visiting Is now Youssef his cousins?

?

Write an email of (70) words to your friend Ehab:

Tell him what you are doing next week, and if you are going anywhere this summer. Your email address is <a href="mailto:hani@yahoo.com">hani@yahoo.com</a> and your friend's email address is

From

To:

Subject:



## Lessons 3.4 It should be fund & Stronger together

### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





musical performance) معرض (أداء) موسيقب



in a row متتالي - على التوالي /



worn out مُنهَك - مُحهَد



disappoint يُحبِط - يُخَيِّب الأمل



take part ریشترک



take time ریستغرق بعض الوقت



**take turns** ريتبادل - (يتناوب) الأدوار



take an interest in پهتم ب

	Extra Vocabulary	كلمات إضافية	
more sleep	قسط أكبر من النوم	good advice	نصيحة جيدة
special food	طعام خاص	energy	طاقة
information	معلومات	art competition	مسابقة فنية
common go	هدف مشتزك هدف	confused	حائر - مشۇش
try hard	ېحاول ېچد	unsure	غير واثق - متردد
part of a te	جزء من فریق am	give a presentation 9	يقدم عرض تقديم

title	عنوان	experience	ندرية - خبرة
together	مغا	ideas	أفكار
activities	أنشطة	successful	لابح
opinion	رأي	positions	<sup>'</sup> ماکن <b>- مواقع</b>
make new friends	يُكوِّن صداقات جديدة	in the first half	مى النصف (الشوط) الأول
teamwork	عمل جماعي	inspire	نلهِم
leader	ماثد	follower	تابِع - <b>مُتابع</b>

## Prepositions

focus on	يُركز علم	under the direction of	تحت إدارة (إشراف)
friends for life	أصدقاء مدى الحياة	find out	يكتشم - يَعرِف
full of	ملب، د - ممتلماً ب	good at	ختد مٿ

Vocabulary Study S B students gook				
disappoint (somebody)	: to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad			
in a row	: one after the other, in order			
worn out	: very tired			
take part	: join in			

take time	do something carefully

take an interest : be curious about

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs amuna disci

Presuit			
perform	تۇدىت	performed	performed
join	يلتحق بـ	joined	joined
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
behave	يتصرف	behaved	behaved
inspire	يُلهِم	inspired	inspired
guide	يُرشِد	guided	guided
achieve	ينجز - يحقِق	achieved	achieved
plan	يخطط	planned	planned

### irregular verbs achiic jie dieci

Present		Pual	
spend time	يقضي وقثًا	spent time	spent time
make sure	يتأكد	made sure	made sure
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
meet	يْقابل	met	met
feel	يشعر	feit	felt
lose	يخسر	lost	lost



#### Stronger together

Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz •. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus • on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to

take part 3. You might learn a lot!



🚺 اختبار قصیر

🖸 يُركِّز

📵 يشارك - يشترك

🕒 لجرية

🚯 شَعُرَتْ بالارتباك 🍵

🕝 عدم الثقة

🕡 يتناوبون (يتبادلون) الأدوار

🕢 بأخذون ومَثًا

و تهتم ہ

#### New friends

When you take part in a new sport, for example, you can easily make new friends. You might meet new people that you haven't met before. Playing together as a team in a game or a competition is a great experience •, and you might make friends for life.

#### New ideas

Have you ever felt confused or unsure when you're working on a project? We all feel like that sometimes. Imagine if you had a whole extra head full of ideas! Or two heads, or three! That's what being in a team is like. Two people have more ideas than one person, and a team of people has even more!

#### Learn to listen

Do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes turns of to speak, and takes time of to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an interest in of other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

#### Learn about yourself

Are you a leader or a follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a team. Leaders inspire o and guide their followers to achieve a common goal . Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders. When you work in a team, you

اللهم اللهم

🛈 يُرشد - يُؤجِّه

🖻 هدف مشترك

📵 توجیه - اشراف

find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.

So, next time you work in a team, try hard to make the team successful. You will learn so much!

# Activity Book Text

#### A football game

Omar : How was the football game o last

weekend, Seif?

Seif : It was really good, thanks, Omar.

Omar : Did you win?

: Yes, we won the game but it wasn't easy. We were

losing in the first half @. Our captain @, Hesham, guided us on how to play the game in the second

half o. That's why he's a good leader o. He had a great plan 6 and we all followed it. We won

because of good teamwork ...

: That sounds great. You've been happier since you joined 8 the football team.

: Yes, I have. When we practice, we take turns o to play in different positions so I've learned a lot. And I've made some

good friends.

: I'll come and watch your next game.



🕦 مباراة كرة القدم

🙆 الشوط الأول

🚯 قائد المريق

🚺 الشوط الثابي

6 قائد

مطة (6

عمل جماعت

🚯 التحقَّت

🕐 ىتبادل الأدوار

**Omar** 

# Exercises on Lessons 3 4

1	Read and complete the text with the words from the box	
1	,,	

time - interest - take - part - turns

When you take ① . . . . in a competition with your friends, do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes to speak, and takes ③ . . . to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an ④ . . . . . in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



give a presentation - had a test start a school newspaper - was sick

A: If you 0 . ...., what would you do?

B: I would study a little bit every day.

A: If your friend 
..., what would you do?

B: I would tell her to go to the doctor.

A: If you had to 6 . . . . . . . , what would you do?

B: I would make lots of notes, and practice it.

A: If you wanted to 
.... what would you do?

B: I would talk to people in the school, and find out interesting stories.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### teamwork - half - joined - positions - leader

Omar : How was the football game last weekend, Seif?

Seif : It was really good. Thanks, Omar.

Omar : Did you win?

Seif : Yes, we won the game, but it wasn't easy. We were losing in the

177

	first • Our captain, Hesham, guided us on
	how to play the game in the second half. That's why he's a good  He had a great plan and we all followed it.
	We won because of good teamwork.
Omar	: That sounds great. You've been happier since you
	the football team.
Seif	: Yes, I have. When we practice, we take turns to play in different
	, so I've learned a lot. And I've made some
Omar	good friends.  : I'll come and watch your next game.
	. The come and watch your next game.
Put	the words in the correct order to make sentences:
1. vou -	or listening - prefer - Do - talking?
	?
2. like -	Some people - working - own - on - their.
3 of m	art great Poing is a toom
	art - great - Being - is - a team.
or ped	ople - A team - has - one person - more ideas - than.
5 vou	take vour teem turne Did in?
you -	take - your team - turns - Did - in?
Writ	te a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:
	"Teamwork"
i ideas 1	stronger together - new mends - new ideas
	- learn to listen - learn about yourself
** ***** ***	**************************************

Connect Plus 6 -

### - Lesson 5 Language



### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary









rush (v) يندفع - يتعجل flight الطيران - رحلة جوية history

poem ، قصيدة

Extra Vocabular	y
-----------------	---

فالقا	كلمان إضا	
	2	

project	مشروع	advice	نميحة
rest (n)	راحة	commands	أوامر
information	معلومات	instructions	تعليمات
right		break (n)	استراحة

### Sentences & Expressions

have to	يضطر إلى	Try your best!	انذل قصارت جهدك!
make a poster	يصنع ملصق	get (it) right ييح	<mark>ہفھہ</mark> - (یفعل) شیء بشکل صح
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	make notes	يُذَوِّن ملاحظات
have a break	يأخذ فترة راحة	go to bed	يذهب للنوم
take time	يستغرق وقتًا	get ahead	بمضي قدمًا - يتقدم
look in books	يبحث في الكتب	in the library	<mark>في المكتبة</mark>
on a plane	على متن طائرة	plan out my ide	as أرتب أفكارب

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منظهه

	DENT .	Tin .	PROTE
check	يتحقق - يتأكد	checked	checked
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
rush	يندفع - يتعجل	rushed	rushed
share	يشارك	shared	shared
try	يحاول	tried	tried

#### Irregular verbs أمعال غير ويبطمه

Present	<u></u>		
make	يَصنع	made	made
tell	يُخبر	told	told
keep	تُبقت	kept	kept
read	يقرأ	read	read
forget	سنني	forgot	forgotten
think	يعتمد - يظن	thought	thought
find	تخد	found	found
say	يمُول	said	said





#### Try your best!

At school, we had a project
On the history of flight.
I had to make a poster,
But I couldn't get it right.



My dad told me to stop and think.
"Take time to plan," he said.
"Don't rush, use your best ideas,
That's how to get ahead."

My friend told me to ask for help.

"It's good to check," he said.

"If you're not sure, ask a question,

Don't keep it in your head."

#### **Dy Rares**

My mom asked me to try my best.

"You can't go wrong," she said.

"But don't forget to have a break!

When you're tired, go to bed!"

My teacher told me to try again.

"Don't be sad," she said.

"Look in books for more ideas,

Make notes on what you've read."

And so, I asked, I read, and tried,
I stopped and had a rest.
Then I planned out my ideas,
My poster was the best!





We use reported speech when we tell someone what another person said.

🎩 خطوات تحويل صيغة الأمر من مباشر إلى غير مباشر:

We use a reporting verb (told).

- ل نستخدم فعل إبلاغ (told) متبوعاً بالمفعول (الشخص الموجه إليه الأمر).
- We omit the quotation marks and the comma.
  - 🕹 نحذف علامتي التنصيص (" ") والفاصلة (, ).
  - If the command is positive, we use (to + infinitive).
    - 💫 في حالة الأمر المثبت، نربط بالرابط (to) ثم الفعل في المصدر.
  - If the command is negative, we put the word (not) before (to).
    - لمصدر. أن حالة الأمر المنفي، نربط بـ (not to) ثم الفعل في المصدر.
- We change pronouns and possessive adjectives according to the meaning.
  - 🕹 نُغير الضمائر وصفات الملكية، إن وُجدَت، طبقًا لمعنم الجملة.

,	Pione I		( Dirnet )	Indirect
1		he - she	(ضمیر مفعول) you	me - us - them
1	we	they	my	his - her
1	(ضمیر فاعل) you	I - we - they	your	my - our - their
1 1 1	me	him - her	our	their
1 - 1	us	them		

### Examples:

- O "Go to bed early, Omar," the father said.
  - ► The father told Omar to go to bed early.
- O Ahmed said to Ramy, "Wear a jumper and a heavy coat. It's very cold."
  - Ahmed told Ramy to wear a jumper and a heavy coat. It was very cold.
- O "Don't close the window, Mai. I need some fresh air," said Rania.
  - Rania told Mai not to close the window. She needed some fresh air.
- O The teacher said to Nahla, "Don't forget your homework."
  - The teacher told Nahla not to forget her homework.

#### The stops

خطوات تحویل الطلب (Request) من مباشر إلى غیر مباشر:

نَفْس خَطُـوات تَحَوِيـل صَيْغَـة الأَمـر هَـي نَفْسـها خَطُـوات تَحَوِيـل الطلـب، إلا أَننـا نَسْتخدم الفعـل (please) إن وُجـدت من جَملـة غيـر المباشـر.

### Example:

- O "Give me your pen, please, Heba" said Ali.
  - ► Ali asked Heba to give him her pen.

### Exercises on Lesson



# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. His friend told him (at of to) ask for help.
- 2. His teacher told him to (tried try trying) again and to make notes on what he read.

- 3. Dad asked (my I me) to tidy my room.
- 4. His mom asked (him he his) to try his best.
- 5. His dad (said told says) him to stop and think.
- 6. "You can't go wrong," my mom (tells told said).
- 7. Ms Dina told us to (read reading reads) pages 15 to 20.
- 8. Dad asked me (at of to) put out the garbage.
- 9. "It's good to check," (tells told said) my friend.
- 10. Dad asked me to (helps helped) my little brother.
- 11. My mom asked me (to not to for) forget to do my homework.
- 12. Dad (tells told said), "Can you help your little brother?"
- 13. My teacher told me (at of to) look in books for more ideas.
- 14. My teacher (said told says) me to make notes on what I'd read.
- 15. My mom asked me to (goes go going) to bed when I was tired.
- 16. My dad told me (not rush rush not to rush).
- 17. My dad told me to (use used uses) my best ideas.
- 18. Ms Salwa told us to (answering answers answer) the questions with full sentences.
- 19. Ms Dalia (said told says) us to do some research on the internet.
- 20. Dad asked me to (puts put putting) away the dishes.

# Read the following text and answer the questions:

Fares had to do a project on the history of flight. He had to make a poster, but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His friend said it was good to check. His teacher told him to try again, to make notes on what he read and to look in books for more ideas. His mom asked him to try his best and to have a break when he's tired. His dad told him to stop and think and to take time to plan. So Fares asked, he read, and he tried. He planned his ideas, and his poster was the best!



#### Choose the correct answer:

 Fares had to make a (report - painting - poster), but he couldn't get it right.

#### Unit 8

- 2. His (friend mom dad) told him to ask for help.
- 3. The underlined word "planned" means (checked arranged shared).

# Answer these questions:

- 4. What did Fares have to do?
- 5. What did the teacher ask Fares to do?
- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- 1. outside and play Dad me told to go.
  - Applications of the Control of the C

Provestivenziano de normante de la compania del la compania de la compania del la compania de la compania del la compania de l

- 2. asked Dalia to help with her homework me.
- 3. me to wash Mom asked the dishes.
- 4. to open Ms Manal Rashad his book told.
- Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nahla:

Tell her about a school project you have done recently. Tell her what the project was, who helped you, and how it was in the end. Your email address is <a href="mailto:sama@school.net">sama@school.net</a> and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:nahla@hotmail.com">nahla@hotmail.com</a>.

_		
۰	rom:	
	1 COLLEGE	

To:

Subject:

# Lesson 6 Writing A personal statement

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





personal statement) بیان شخصی



independently بشکل مستقل



confident واثق



group activities أنشطة جماعية



future goals أهداف مستقبلية



interests تامامات



community

محتفع



wall collage مُلصَق جداري (کولاج جداري)

### Extra Vacabular

subjects

science club مواد دراسية

نادي العلوم

grade

reasons صفّ دراسي - مرحلة دراسية

أسياب

PE (physical education) التربية البدنية topic

موضوع

matches

تاریات chart

جدول - مُخَطُّط بياني



185

introduction	مقدمة	inventor	مخترع
subheadings	عناوين فرعية	scientist	رمإلد
sociable	شخص اجتماعي	reader	قارىئ
independent	مستقل	career	مهنة - حياة مهنية
Ras Mohamme	d National Park	design (n)	
	محمية رأس محمد الوطنية		تصميم

# Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs مُعَالُ فَتَنْظُمُهُ الْمُعَالُ فَتَنْظُمُهُ

- Francisco			
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered
design	اتطمعا	designed	designed
compete	ينافس	competed	competed
include	يشمل - يُدْرِج	included	included .
challenge	تتحدم	challenged	challenged

### irregular verbs منتظمة أفعال غير منتظمة

		<u> </u>		The state of the s
understand		يفهم	understood	understood
win	. 1 1.	يفوز	won	won
take part	ث	یشارك - یشترا	took part	taken part

A personal statement is a text about YOU! You might write one if you're starting a new school, if you want to join a team, or are volunteering in your community.

البيان الشخصي هـو بـصٌ بنحـدث عبـك! بمكنك كباية بيـان شخصي إذا بـدأتَ الحصـور فـي مدرسـة جديـدة، أو إذا كبـت برعـب فـي الانصمـام إلـي فريـق، أو إذا كنـت متطوعًا فـي مجنمعـك.

- Include lots of information and reasons. This helps the reader really get to know you.
  - قم بإدراج الكثير من المعلومات والأسباب، هـذا بسـاعد الفـارِّ علـم البعـرُّم عليـك حفًا.
- Use subheadings to tell the reader the topic of each part of the personal statement.

استحدم العناوين الفرعية لإخبار الفارئ بموضوع كل جزء من البيان الشخصب.

Personal statements often use contracted forms, for example: *I'm* عالبًا ما تُستخدم أشكال محبصرة للكلمات مي البيانات الشخصية، على سبيل المثال: *I'm* 



# Personal statement by None (supply egolf)

#### Introduction

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident • – I'm happy to Share my ideas • in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently • too. I enjoy taking part • in group activities •

### My favorite subjects

science, too, because I want to understand how the world works. I also like PE 6. I've played in some important volleyball matches this year. My team doesn't always win, but it's fun anyway!

#### My interests

I go to a science club after school. I'm competing in a science competition next week with three friends. We're designing a new robot. I hope our design wins the competition!



- وائق 🕕
- مشاركة أمكارب
  - نشكل مستقل 😉
- 🐠 المشاركة الاشتراك
  - فيدلمة جماعية
- 🜀 مادة التربية البدنية
  - نادب العلوم 🕡
    - أتبافس 🔞

#### My future goals

Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum. When I'm older, I'd like to be a scient stoor an inventor . My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

عالم
 آ) مبتكر - مخترع

# Activity Book Text

#### Personal statement by Wasl Brahim, aged 10

#### Introduction

My name is Wael, and I'm in Grade 6. I'm white to, but I also enjoy working in a team. I'm sociatie 2, and I like making new friends.



#### My favorite subjects

I love English, math, and science. I love music, too, because it challenges of me. I've taken part in two school concerts of this year.

#### My interests

I go to an art club safter school. I'm taking part in an art snow snext month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wal, collage with two other students.

#### 🚺 مستقل

#### سدلمتها و

#### ענבנים 🔞

#### و حفلات موسيقية

#### و نادي الفلون

#### 🔞 محمية رأس محمد الوطبية

#### My future goals

Next year, I'd like to study more science and learn more about the environment. I'd like to visit the Ras Mohammed National Park 3. When I'm older, I'd like a career that helps the environment. Dad told me to work hard, so that I could go to university.

# Grammar Study 🐮





Remember

enjoy-love-like ---- v-ing/noun

#### Examples:

- O lenjoy working in a team.
- O like making new friends.

would like to / want to ---- inf. (المصدر)

#### **Examples:**

- O I would like to do more science activities.
- O I want to understand how the world works.



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

scientist – competing – competition – museum – design

I go to a science club after school. I'm competing in a science 0 . next week with three friends. We're designing a new robot. I hope our wins the competition! Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science 

. When I'm older, I'd like to be a 0 or an inventor. My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### ideas - team - activities - confident - hard

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work 
I'm happy to share my 
in front of the class. I enjoy working
in a 
in a 
in group 
in group

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### club - independent - collage - sociable - team

My name is Wael, and I'm in Grade 6. I'm , but I also enjoy working in a team. I'm , and I like making new friends. I go to an art after school. I'm taking part in an art show next month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wall with two other students.

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I'd like to (to visiting visit to visit) the Ras Mohammed National Park.
- 2. I enjoy (worked working work) in a team.
- 3. What would she like (to visiting visit to visit) next year?
- 4. I enjoy (taking take to taking) part in group activities.
- 5. I want to (worked working work) independently.
- 6. Reem would (like liking likes) to go to the future.
- 7. I enjoy (study to studying studying) history and math.
- 8. I'd like to (am be was) a scientist or an inventor.
- 9. I'm sociable, and I like (making make to making) new friends.
- 10. I'd like (to study study studying) more science and learn more about the environment.
- 11. Does Noha like (worked working work) in a team?
- 12. I would like (do doing to do) more science activities and visit a science museum.

	5	Put the	words	in the	correct	order 1	to make	sentences:
1					_			contonices,

- 1. does subjects What like Noha?
- 2. activities I enjoy taking in group part.
- 3. she in like a team working Does?
  - 7
- 4. designing robot We're new a.
- Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements:

"My personal statement"

an introduction - your favorite subjects - your interests - your future goals

# Lesson 7 Story: Lour in the oasis

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





the Scouts قريق الكشافة



أرقائد والد



ripped in half تمزقت إلى نصفين ,



flashlight پکشاف - مصباح یدوی



oasis واحة



blew (past of blow) هُبُّت - طَيْرَت



backpack

, حقيبة ظهر



first aid kit حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية ,

#### Extra Vocabular

الامان إننافية

adventure	مغامرة compass	بوصلة
journey	direction رحلة	اتجاه
pienie	نزههٔ خلویهٔ <mark>map</mark>	خريطة
desert	north	شُمَال
wind	وباح <b>road</b>	ڟڔيق

			_ ccsson /
prize	جائزة	suddenly	مُجِأَةً
pieces	قِطَع	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
lost (adj)	تائه	luckily	لحسن الحظ
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	heavy	ثقيلة
without	بدون	lighter	أخف وزئا

# Prepositions & Expressions

walk in groups	پمشون في مجموعات	out of (his) hands	خارج عن إرادته
determined to win	مُقَمِّم على الفوز	the hands of a watch	
on the bus	في الأتوبيس (الطفلة)	to the other side of	إلى الجانب الآخر من
take out	يُخْرِج _ يون فيورو _ محيوليس	the meeting place	نقطة (مكان) الالتقاء
	ينزل من الأتوبيس (الحافا		, مسموح (لهم) ب

# Conjugation of verbs

# Regular verbs achus dissi

	resent		and the second
pack	پحزم (حقیبة)	packed	packed
check	يفحص - يتمقد	checked	checked
determine	يعزم - يصمم	determined	determined
allow	تسمح	allowed	allowed
follow	يتابع - يتبع	followed	followed
rip	يمزق	ripped	ripped
fix	يصلح	fixed	fixed
point	یوجه - یشیر	pointed	pointed
reach	يصل إلى	reached	reached
damage	يُدَمِّر - يُثْلِف - يضر	damaged	damaged

hold

break

	Irregular verbs	ال عبر منتضمه	أفعا
<b>GrPyre</b>	CONT .		
tell	يُخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
win	يفوز	won	won
keep	شقبز	kept	kept
give	يعطِي	gave	given
set off	ينطلق	set off	set off
blow	تَهُبّ - تُطَيّر	blew	blown
catch	يُمسك - يلحق بـ	caught	caught
hold	. طسم	held	held

يكس

broke

# Read and learn

# Story: Lost in the casis

Seleem was really excited to take part in the Scouts' o desert adventure o. The day before, he packed o his backpack. However, it was very heavy, and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all that was in it. He packed it again, with her help. This time, he only put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight o, a first aid kit, and a water bottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.



broken

- 🛈 الكشافين أفراد الكشّافة
  - 🕑 مغامرة
  - 🥹 حُزْم وَضُب
  - 🕢 مصباح (کشّاف) بدوی
    - واحق
    - 🜀 مكان اللمّاء (الالتمّاء)

They left at ten o'clock the next morning. Everybody met at school, and the Scouts and their teacher traveled by bus to the other side of the oasis The teacher said they would walk in groups to the meeting place .

The Scouts were put into groups, and each group had a leader . The group leaders were older. There was a prize for the team who got to the meeting place first, and Seleem was determined @ to win

#### مَألَد

#### 🔞 عاره - مُصَفَّم

#### 9 أخضًا

#### 🗓 حذاء رياضي

### However, it wasn't that easy ...

اخزج 🛈

🗗 نُزْلُوا (من الحافلة)

الطلقت الطلقت

🗗 طیزت

🗗 مُزْمَّت (مُطِعْت) إلى بصفين

🖒 توجيهها إلى

On the bus, the teacher checked everybody's bags Unfortunately, Asser's bag was too heavy! The teacher told him to take some things out. Seleem and his friends helped Asser make his bag lighter . He kept his lunch, his sweater, and his map. He took out his sneakers . some games, and some potato chips. And he also took عدة إسعامًات أولية out this compass.

When they got off the bus, the teacher gave each group a map. He told them they had to go north. The Scouts weren't allowed to use their phones. The groups set off , using the map to follow the road. It was very hot, so after a while, Seleem and his group stopped to have some water. They sat under a tree, but there was suddenly a strong wind. It blew the map out of Seleem's hands! They ran after it, but when they caught it, the map ripped in half ...

The group couldn't fix the map, so they held the two pieces together. The map was difficult to read, and they weren't sure where to go. Seleem knew they had to go north, so he asked Asser for his compass. Asser looked in his bag, but he didn't have it!

Luckily, Samir had a really good idea. He knew how to use the hands on his watch to find north, by pointing them at 6 the sun.

After a few minutes, the Scouts knew where to go. The group set off again, following Samir. They were the last group to reach the meeting place. However, they won a prize for having the best idea to find north!

Next time, Seleem will make sure he packs a flashlight, a first aid kit , a water bottle ... and his compass!

# Activity Book Text

#### Amina's mom takes charge 0

One day, Amina, her sister Nadia, her brother Magdy, and her mom were going on an adventure 9

. Mom was driving them to the oasis to see their dad. He was working on an engineering project o at the oasis for a few weeks. Amina was really looking forward to o seeing him. Mom packed 9 lots of food and water so they could have a picnic on the way. They set off early because the journey was long and it wasn't a good road. Before they set off 6, Mom asked Amina to run back into the house to get two picnic rugs .

At lunchtime, Mom stopped the car and they had a delicious picnic. Amina noticed that it was getting windy 3. It looked like there might be a sandstorm . They quickly set off again and Amina was right. Soon they were in the middle of a sandstorm and it was difficult to drive the car. So, Mom stopped the car and they waited. After 20 minutes, the wind stopped but now the car was stuck to in the sand! The car wheels turned around but the car didn't move forward.

Everybody got out of the car and looked at the sand. Nadia started to cry. Mom took charge and told the children not to worry. She asked Magdy to get the camping shovel , and dig some of the sand from in front of the car. She told Amina to get the picnic rugs. When Magdy stopped digging B, Mom put the picnic rugs on the ground, in front of the wheels. Then she told the children to get into the car. She turned on the engine and the wheels turned around on the picnic rugs.

Slowly, the car moved forward. Soon, the car was out of the sand and they were on the road! The children laughed. Amina's mom drove very carefully on the sandy road ®, and an hour later the family arrived at the oasis. They all had a great story to tell Amina's dad!

- مغامرة
- 쥥 مشروع هندسي
  - نتطلع إلى و جَهُزْنَ - حَضُرَنَ
- 🙃 ينطنقوا يتجركوا
  - 🕜 سجاجید
  - فعاهد 🔞
  - 🗿 عاصمة رمنية
  - ال في منتمن
    - الًا عالقة
    - اع جاروف
    - الله حقر
    - 🕼 محرك
  - 🗗 عجلات إطارات
    - نُ طريق رملي

# Exercises on Lesson (7)





# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### packed – flashlight – aid – backpack – desert

Seleem was really excited to take part in the Scouts' o adventure. The day before, he packed his @ . However, it was very heavy, and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all that was in it. He 6 it again, with her help. This time, he only put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight, a first 4 a water bottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.



# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### journey – adventure – set – oasis – picnic

One day, Amina, her sister Nadia, her brother Magdy, and her mom were going on an 0 ..... Mom was driving them to the @ to see their dad. He was working on an engineering project at the oasis for a few weeks. Amina was really looking forward to seeing him. Mom packed lots of food and water so they could have a 6 on the way. They set off early because the journey was long and it wasn't a good road. Before they @ off, Mom asked Amina to run back into the house to get two picnic rugs.



# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. Asser asked Samir for compass his.
- 2. Seleem did backpack his When pack?
- 3. Scouts The go knew to where.
- 4. did Seleem's a prize Why group win?
- 5. was to determined win Seleem.





# Unit 8 Test 5



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:



#### نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

- Some people fike to (talk hear read write) a lot. However, it's important to listen, too.
- A team works best when everybody takes (part time interest turns) to speak and listen.
- 3. You might (charge challenge check change) your opinion when you listen to other people's ideas.
- 4. You can learn a lot when you take an (idea interest aim opinion) in other people's ideas.
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

  Leader team follower success common

Are you a leader or a ? Followers and leaders are both important for the ? . . . of a team. Leaders inspire and guide their followers to achieve a . . . . goal. Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders. When you work in a . . . , you find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.

# 3

#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms

We learn a lot of subjects at school. Everything we study has some uses in our lives. We learn our own language, Arabic, to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us. We learn science to tell us about living things. Foreign languages make us communicate with other people and know how other people think and talk. Math helps us to think. Computers are also very important because they can do sums quickly and store information. They can also work with words and numbers. History tells us about our own country and the people of the world around us.

Term 2

Geography tells us about plants, animals and people, where and how they live and what they do. Exercises and games help us grow strong and keep us fit.



### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (History Math Science Geography) tells us about living things.
- The opposite of the underlined word "Foreign" is (International Local - Global - Far).
- 3. The passage mentioned (four five six seven) school subjects.

# Answer these questions:

- 4. How are exercises and games useful to us?
- 5. Why do we learn Arabic?

	The Reader News Team	(4Ms)
A- Read	and write T (True) or F (False):	(2Ms)

- 1. Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve.
- On social media, people always write a lot of words.
- 3. The local magazine in their town heard about what the children were doing.
- 4. The newspaper team's success was good for the school.
- Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)
- 5. What idea did Mrs Basma have for the children?
- 6. What happened later in the year?

# Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. My friend told me (not keep keep to not to keep keep) the questions in my head.
- 2. I (would am do were) taking part in an art show next month.
- 3. My teacher told me to (tries try trying tried) again.
- I'm (work works worked working) on a big wall collage with two other students.
- 5. My friend (asked ask say said) me to show him my new bag.
- 6. I'm competing in a science competition (tomorrow last past next) week with three friends.

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

- 1. teacher told My science hard me to work.
- 2. you are the weekend on What doing?
- 3. going to Jumana isn't week school next.

# Write an email of (70) words to your friend Jana: (5Ms)

Tell her how you are getting ready for the next final exams. Tell her how you plan your study and who helps you when you need help. Your email address is <a href="mailto:

From:

To:

Subject:



200

Step Ahead

(6Ms)

# Review ( Test 6 on Units (7-8)



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Shady is (excited embarrassed afraid patient) about this month.
- Shady is anxious about his (history and English history and math history and Arabic - history and science) tests.
- 3. There's a charity sale at school in (three four five two) weeks.
- 4. Books, cakes, and toys will be sold to raise (money children animals books) for charity.
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

paste - pain - mint - medicine - inventions

The Ancient Egyptians invented lots of new things. Some of those

are still used today. The Ancient Egyptians were interested
in health and . They used herbs to stop and diseases. They invented a type of toothpaste. It was made with salt, flowers, and pepper which was mixed into a paste.



#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

My name is Khaled. Today was the last day of school before summer vacation. In our last class, Mr Bashir asked us to prepare a presentation about driverless cars. He said, "Would driverless cars be safer or more dangerous than normal cars?" Then he showed us an interactive model of a driverless car. If I could drive, I wouldn't want a driverless car. I don't think a driverless car would be as safe as a car with a driver. I think I'd feel anxious. But school has finished for today, and it's the beginning of summer vacation! I am going to spend my vacation in Hurghada with my cousins. I'm really excited! They've planned lots of things to do.

रिटारेका है

#### Review 4



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Today was the last day of school before (winter fall spring summer) vacation.
- 2. Mr Bashir asked us to prepare a presentation about (robots spaceships -driverless cars -rockets).
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "dangerous" is (safe delicious famous - precious).

#### **Answer these questions:**

- How would Khaled feel towards driverless cars?
- 5. Where is Khaled going to spend his vacation?

## The Reader News Team

(4Ms)

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(2Ms)

- 1. Tarek was a good leader.
- 2. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper.
- Bassant organized a beach clean-up.
- The newspaper team made a flyer about Kitty.

#### Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. What was the problem with the team's first video?
- 6. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"?
- Choose the correct answer:

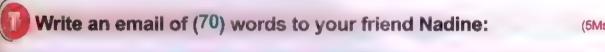
(3Ms)

1. If I (designed - designs - designing - design) a bike, I'd make one with solar panels.



- 2. Ahmed is tall. Kareem is tall, too. Ahmed is (taller the tallest as tall as as tall) Kareem.
- 3. If everyone recycled plastic, we (would have wouldn't have are having have) so much pollution in the ocean.
- 4. (Were Was Is Are) Mona looking after her little sister tomorrow?
- 5. Mrs Basma asked us (prepare to prepare preparing prepared) a presentation about driverless cars.
- 6. Mom asked me (at of for to) put away the clothes.

-	, parating and open and
	Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)
1	invention - What - water - cleans - dirty?
	?
2	park - the - to - going - We're - tomorrow.
	•
3	A filter - stop - diseases - straw - can.
_	



Tell her about your next summer vacation. Where will you go? With whom? What are you going to do there? Your email address is nesma@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is nadine@gmail.com.

From	
То:	
Subject <sup>-</sup>	
	., ., .,
********	

Research to the second



Main Vocabulary	ry
-----------------	----

### الكلمات الأساسية

# Paragraph (1)

buy	ships يشتري	ا سفن
sell	trains يبيع	قطارات
goods	trucks بضائع - سلع	شاحنات
move	shop ينقل	يتسوق
country	stores بلد- دولة	متاجر

# Paragraph (2),

trade route	طريق تجاري	covering	يغطي
opened	افتتح	nearly	ما يقارب
rich city	مدينة غنية	types	أنواع
China	الصين	land	الأرض
reached	وصلت	across	عبر
the Mediterranean Se	البحر المتوسط a	deserts	محاري
actually	في الواقع	mountains	جبال
routes	طرق	important	هام

# Paragraph (3)

trade (v) (n)	يتاجر - تجارة	precious stones	أحجار كريمة
the east	الشرق	perfumes	عطور
Europe	أوروبا	spices	توابل
the west	الغرب	wool	موف
silk	حرير	silver	فضق
expensive	غالٍ - ثمين	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
material	مادة	items	سلع - أشياء
made in	منعت می	made from	مصنوعة من
possible	, ممكن	glass	ر زجاج

# Paragraph (4)

traveling	السفر	dry weather	الطقس الجاف
hard	قاس - صعب	steal	يسرق
dangerous	خطيرة	money .	نقود
experienced	ذوي خبرة	goods	بضائع
cross	يعبر - يجتاز	safer	أكثر أمانًا
camels	جفال	traders	لَجَالِرِيونَوجه دي دي ي
form of transportation	وسيلة مواصلات	large groups	مجموعات كبيرة
long distances	مسافات طويلة	caravans	كرافانات - قوافل

# Paragraph (5)

cultures	paper ثقافات	ورق
shared ideas	invention تشاركوا الأفكار	اختراع
music	around the world موسیقت	حول العالم
crafts	studied the stars مصنوعات يدوية - حرف	درسوا النجوم

# Paragraph (6)

buildings		Damascus	دمشق
history	تاريخ 🛴 📜	inns	فنادق - نُزُل
towns	מבن	caravanserais	خان - نُزُل مسافرین
along	عنْ مول - طوال	rest (v) (n)	راحة - يرتاح
Constantinople (	(Istanbul) (اعتنامان قرار السطانية)	nowadays	في الوقت الحاضر

# Vocabulary Study SB Student's

route	: a road or something you can follow on a journey								
trade	to buy and sell things								
inn	: a building where people can sleep, eat, and drink								
goods	things that people buy and sell								
trader	: someone who buys and sells things								
steal	<ul> <li>to take something from a person without asking or paying</li> </ul>								
thesaurus	: a book in which words are put into groups with other words that have similar meanings								

#### The Silk Road



#### Paragraph (1)

Today, it's easy to buy and sell goods • in different parts of the world. When we want to move things from one country to another, we can use big ships •, fast trains, trucks •, or planes. Because of the internet, we can shop • in stores that are a long way from our homes. However, many years ago, it was difficult to buy and sell things from far away.

🚺 بضائع - سِنْع 👂 سفن 🔕 شاحنات 🐧 بتسوُق - يتبضّع

#### Paragraph (2)

The Silk Road o changed this. In 130 BCE, a trade route o was opened from Xi'an o, a large, rich city in China. Over time, it reached the Mediterranean Sea o. Today, we call it the Silk Road, but it was actually a number of routes covering nearly 6,500 kilometers. These routes went through many countries and different types of land, across deserts and mountains. The Silk Road was very important for over 1,500 years.

🕕 طريق الحرير 💈 طريق تجاري 🔞 مدينة شيان 🚯 البحر المتوسط

#### Paragraph (3)

The Silk Road has its name because people traded silk between China, in the east, and the countries we now know as Europe, in the west. Silk was a very expensive material, and at first, it was only made in China. The Silk Road made it possible for people in other countries to buy it for the first time. Many other things were traded on the Silk Road, too. From China, people also sold things



such as precious stones o, perfumes, tea, and spices o. From Europe, people sold things such as horses, wool o, silver, olive oil, and items made from glass.

🚺 الأحجار الكريمة 🗿 توايل 🔞 صوف



### Paragraph (4)

Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. The roads were sometimes old and dangerous, and people had to be very experienced • to cross the deserts. Camels were an important form of transportation • because they could travel long distances • in hot, dry weather. Sometimes, people tried to steal • money or goods, and it was safer •



for traders to travel in large groups, called caravans 6. צפיע בונה - מים נייעני 0

😉 شكل من أشكال النقل 😉 مسافات 🗗 يسرق - ينهب 🗿 أكثر أمانًا 🌀 مُوافل

#### Paragraph (5)

However, the Silk Road was important for more than just buying and selling goods. Traders • met people from other cultures when they traveled to new places. This meant that they shared ideas and things from their culture, such as food, music, and crafts •. For example, paper was an invention • from China that traveled around the world. Some people studied the stars, and so they taught other people what they knew.

🚺 التُجُارِ 🥹 حِرَف - صناعات يدوية 🔞 اختراء - ابتكار

### Paragraph (6)

Lots of places and buildings, have an interesting history because of the Silk Road. Many towns along the routes became rich, important cities, such as Constantinople (now Istanbul) and Damascus. Large inns • - or caravanserais - were built as places for travelers to eat and rest, too.

Nowadays, it's easy and quick to move goods, but the Silk Road made it possible for countries to trade goods and share ideas, over 2,000 years ago!

🕕 فنادق صغيرة - نُزُل.

#### Questions with their model answers

# Read and write (Yes) or (No):

- 1. Today, it's easy to buy and sell goods in different parts of the world. (......)
- 2. Many years ago, it was easy to buy and sell things from far away. ( .....)
- 3. The Silk Road was opened from Xi'an in 130 BCE. (.....)

प्रतम्म इ

208) Step Ahead

The Re	eader
4. The Silk Road was actually a number of routes covering nearly	
6,500 kilometers.	()
5. The Silk Road was very important for over 1,500 years.	( )
6. The Silk Road has its name because silk was traded between China and Europe.	
7. Silk was only made in China at first.	()
8. Traveling on the Silk Road was easy.	( )
9 Cample was an important for	()
9. Camels were an important form of transportation on the Silk Roa	ad.
40 The Oill Day	()
10. The Silk Road was important only for buying and selling goods.	(. )
11. It was safer for traders to travel in large groups, called caravans	s. ( )
12. Paper was an invention from China that traveled around the world	d. ( )
13. Horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and glass items were sold from	
Europe.	()
14. Many towns along the Silk Road routes became poor and	(1111111)
unimportant cities.	( )
15. Constantinople is now known as China.	( )
16. Caravanserais were built as places for travelers to eat and rest.	( )
17. The Silk Road made it impossible for countries to trade goods	( )
and share ideas.	/ \
18. Nowadays, it's difficult and slow to move goods.	()
19. Many towns along the routes became rich, important cities such	( )
Constantinople and Damascus.	as
	( )
Read and answer the questions:	
1. Where did the Silk Road start?	SIB
**************************************	
2. Why was the Silk Road established in 130 BCE?	
3. What types of land did the Silk Road cross?	SB
\$2012164000000000000000000000000000000000	
4. What was the primary material traded from China on the Silk Roa gave the route its name?	d that
	B

209

Connect Plus 6 -

# The Reader SB 5. What goods did people from China sell? SI 6. What goods did people from Europe sell? 7. How long was the Silk Road important for international trade? 8. Which animals were an important form of transportation on the Silk Road? Why were camels an important form of transportation on the Silk Road? 10. How did traders travel safely on the Silk Road? 11. Why were caravans safer for traders traveling on the Silk Road? 12. How was the Silk Road important for more than just buying and selling goods? 13. Which two rich and important cities benefited from the Silk Road? SB 14. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous? 15. What things from their culture did people share? 58 16. How has the internet changed the way we shop for goods from far away places? 17. How did the Silk Road change trade and culture in the past? AB

#### Answers

# 1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1	-	Yes	2-	No	3-	Yes	4-	Yes	5-	Yes	6-	Yes	7-	Yes	8-	No	9-	Yes
1	U-	NO	11-	Yes	12	-Yes	13	-Yes	14	- No	15-	No	16	Yes	17-	No	18-	No
1	9-	Yes																

# 2 Read and answer the questions:

- 1. It started in Xi'an in China.
- 2. To facilitate trade between China and Europe.
- 3. It crossed deserts and mountains.
- 4. Silk.
- They sold precious stones, perfumes, tea, and spices.
- 6. They sold horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and items made from glass.
- 7. Over 1,500 years.
- 8. Camels.
- 9. Because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather.
- 10. They traveled in large groups, called caravans.
- 11. Because traveling in large groups offered protection.
- 12. Traveling traders shared ideas and things from their culture, such as food, music, and crafts.
- 13. Constantinople (Istanbul) and Damascus.
- 14. Sometimes, people tried to steal money or goods.
- 15. Food, music, and crafts.
- 16. It has made it easy to shop in stores that are a long way from our homes.
- 17. The Silk Road made it possible for countries to trade goods, share ideas and things from their culture over 2,000 years ago.





Main	Vocabulary	
Light	vocabulary	

### الكلمات الأساسية

# Paragraph (1)

transport	farther than ٰینقل	أبعد من
by sea	vehicles عبر البحر	، مرکبات
instead	יבון סט carry	تحمل
faster	துவி cargo	، شحنة - حمولة - بضاعة

# Paragraph (2)

journey	sea route رحلة طويلة	طريق بحري
Asia	the Red Sea آسیا	البحر الأحمر
continent	connected قارة	رَبط
Africa	Port Said أفريقيا	نورسعتد
the Suez Canai	Suez قناة السويس	السويس
quicker	long أسرع	طويلة

# Paragraph (3)

nearly	goods تقریبًا	بضائع بضائع
cargo ships	includ سفن الشحن (تجارية)	
businesses	cottor أنشطة تجارية	
global	ישור אוסיה - ליסון uice	أرز
all over the world	onion في جميع أنحاء العالم	
huge ,	impor ضخمة	
export	metal يطدر	מאבני

# Paragraph (4)

transportation	النقل	planes	طائرات
technology	تكنولوجيا	fast	سريع
changing	متغيرة بين	trains	قطارات
all the time	طوال الوقت	look like	تشبه
		,	



# Vocabulary Study AB Activit

cargo : the goods that a ship carries

cotton : a natural material used to make clothes

import: to buy goods and bring them into your country

global : about the whole world

export: to sell goods to a different country

# Transportation Today



#### Paragraph (1)

The Silk Road was a very important trade route of for around 1,500 years. However, over time, people started to use ships to transport of goods by sea instead, and so it became less important.

Ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicles of and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo of.

🛈 طریق تجارب 😉 ینقل 🕃 مرکبات 🗗 شحنة - حمولة - بضاعة

Huge cargo ships transport

#### Paragraph (2)

For many years, people made very long, and sometimes dangerous, journeys • by sea from Asia, around the continent • of Africa, to Europe. However, in 1869, the Suez Canal • was opened to help with this problem. It was built to make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea. It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long, and it makes the journey around 7,000 kilometers shorter!

🚺 رحلات طویلة 🥹 قارة 😉 قناهٔ السویس

215

### Paragraph (3)

Today, the Suez Canal is used by nearly 19,000 cargo ships a year, so it's a very important sea route for businesses. A lot of today's businesses of are global 2. This means that they trade with other businesses in countries all over the world. These businesses often use huge ships to export 3 goods, to sell and move things to other countries. Goods that are exported from Egypt include cotton, rice, and onions. Goods can also be imported into a country. That is, they are bought from another country. Important goods that are imported into Egypt include some types of metal and paper.

انشطة تجارية ﴿ عَالَمُ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ عَالَى اللَّهُ اللّ

### Paragraph (4)

Transportation • and technology • are changing all the time. As well as ships, we now have planes and fast trains to help move goods all around the world. However, it looks like the Suez Canal will be important to us for a long time to come!

### Quartians with their model enswers

# Read and write (Yes) or (No):

- 1. The Silk Road was a very important trade route for around 1,300 years.
- 2. The Silk Road became less important when people started to transport goods by sea.
- 3. Ships could travel faster and farther than animals on the road.
- 4. Ships transport goods by sea.
- 5. In the past, the journey by sea from Asia, around Africa to Europe, was short and safe.
- 6. In 1869, the Suez Canal was opened between the Red Sea and the Atlantic Ocean
- and the Atlantic Ocean.

  7. The Suez Canal is 2,000 kilometers long.
- 8. Today, about 19,000 cargo ships use the Suez Canal every year. AB (
- 9. The Suez Canal is a very important sea route for businesses. ( ...)
- 10. A lot of today's businesses are local.

Connect Plus 6

The Reader
<ul> <li>11. Egypt exports wool and rice and imports coal and paper.</li> <li>12. Important goods that are imported into Egypt include some types of metal and paper.</li> </ul>
13. Transportation and technology are not changing all the time.
14. To export means to sell goods to a different country.
15. Today, fast trains and planes are also used to transport cargo. ( )
Read and answer the questions:
1. Why did people start to use ships?
2. Were ships faster than animals on the road?
3. What could ships carry?
4. How were the journeys by sea from Asia, around the continent of Africa, to Europe?
5. When was the Suez Canal opened?
6. Why was the Suez Canal opened?
7. What cities did the Suez Canal connect?
8. How long is the Suez Canal?
9. How many cargo ships use the Suez Canal today?
10. What goods does Egypt export?
11. What goods does Egypt import?
12. What means of transport can help move goods all around the world?
13. Is the Silk Road or the Suez Canal more important for trade? Why?



- 14. How has the Suez Canal changed trade and global culture today?
- 15. Do you think the Suez Canal is important to Egypt? Why?



## Answers

### Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1-	No	2- Yes	3-	Yes	4-	Yes	5-	No	6-	No	7-	No	8-	Yes	9-	Yes
10-	No	11- No	12	-Yes	13-	No	14-	Yes	15-	Yes						

### Read and answer the questions:

- 1. To transport goods by sea.
- 2. Yes, they were.
- 3. They could carry more cargo.
- 4. They were very long, and sometimes dangerous.
- 5. in 1869.
- To make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea.
- 7. It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez.
- 8. It is about 193 kilometers long.
- 9. The Suez Canal is used by nearly 19,000 cargo ships a year.
- 10. Cotton, rice, and onions.
- 11. Some types of metal and paper.
- 12. Planes and fast trains.
- 13. The Suez Canal. Because ships can travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road.
- 14. The Suez Canal made a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea. It is a very important sea route for businesses, as a lot of today's businesses are global.
- 15. Yes. Because it increases the national income.





## Maria Report

## الشجميلات



He wanted to start a school newspaper. He thought it's important for people to know what's happening around them. Hatem was the editor. He was a good leader and great at writing. Every week, he asked his team for interesting news stories. Now, Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo.

أراد حاتم أن يبدأ صحيفة مدرسية، حبث كان بعنفد أنه من المهم أن بعرف الناس ما تحدث حصوص الناس ما تحدث من المعمد عولهم. كان حاتم تصلب من مرتقة من الكتابة وكل أسوع، كان حاتم تصلب من مرتقة من أصفا إحيارية شيّقة. حاليًا، حاتم صحفي شهير، وتكنب لأكبر صحيفة من الماهرة



He knew a lot about sports, so he was the sports journalist on the team. He helped everybody in school take an interest in sports. Now, Tarek loves television and works as a producer for a sports program.

كان طارق يعرف الكثير عن الرياضة، لدلك كان الصحف، الرباضي في المربق، وقد ساعد الحقيع في المدرسة على الاهتمام بالرباضة. والآن، يحت طارق التليمريون، وتعمل منيذًا ليربامج رياضي



She loved science and the environment, so she often went to science fairs. She found out who was doing interesting experiments. Bassant encouraged the young children to recycle the school trash and motivated them to think about how they could help their environment. Now, she works as a science reporter and writes about climate change.

كانت بسنت تحب العلوم والبيئة، ولدلك، كانت تذهب إلى معارض العلوم بشكن مبيطم، واكشفت مراحا عقوم بتجارب مثيرة للاهتمام. شجعت بسبت الأطمال الصعار على إعاده تدوير بقانات المدرسة، وحفرتهم عنف التنكير من كيفية مساعدة بيثتهم اتعمل بسبت الأن كمراسلة علمية، وتكتب عن نعير الصاح



She was really interested in art, so she spent a lot of time in the art studio in school and doing paintings and pottery outside of school. Her mom was an artist and taught her a lot about different ways of painting and making art. Nadine reported on art competitions in school. Now, she is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.

كانت نادين شديدة الاهتمام بالمن، لذلك أمصت الكثير من الومت مما مرسم المدرسة، كما فامت برسم اللوطات وبحث الفخار خارج المدرسة. كانت والدنها مبانة وعلمتها الكثير عن الطرق المختلفة للرسم، وصنع بهن اكتب لاداس عن المسابقات المنية في المدرسة اوالآل ، تعمل كمصورة بسامر حول العالم، وتنتقط صورا للأحداث العهمة

#### The Reader



She was an enthusiastic teacher. She helped the children put their news reports on the school website.

كانت بسمة معلمة متدمسة، وساعدت الأطفال في وضع تقاريرهم الإخبارية على موقع المدرسة.



She came to school and interviewed the newspaper team.

جائت المراسلة إلى المدرسة وأحرت مقائلة مع مربق الصحيمة.



He gave Tarek information about sports at school.

أعطى مدرس التربية البدنية معلومات عن الرياضة لطارق.

## Picture Dictionary





kitten öyüse öhö My cat, Daisy, had two kittens, and they're so cute!



print يَطبع My aunt helps print the local newspaper on a large machine.



deaf
My cousin is deaf,
so she uses sign
language.



beach clean-up تنظیف الشاطه We organized a beach

clean-up at our local beach in the summer. There was a lot of trash there.



متحمس

enthusiastic

My mom was very enthusiastic about winning her running race. She put a lot of energy into it!



أنشرة إعلانية I read the flyer about the lost cat. I hope they find him soon!



<b>*******</b>	Main Vocabulary	كلمات الأساسية	JI
W 100 B AA			
chat	يدردش	primary school	مدرسة ابتدائية
idea	فكرة	grade 6	الصف السادس
produce	يُضْدِر	important	ا هام
newspaper	جريدة	editor	مُحرِّر
events	أحداث	leader	قائد
check	يفحص - يراجع	wildlife	الحياة البرية
PE teacher	مدرس التربية البدنية	sports journalist	يمضليا يمفعه
interest	اهتماه	environment	البيئة
experiment	قيملد قررجة	science fairs	معارض علمية
encourage	يُشجع	climate change	تغيَّر المناخ
motivate	يُحفز	trash	قمامة
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	artist	فنان
photographe	ۇمۇر محفىي r	report	تقردر
enthusiastic	متحمس	community	محتمع
reporter	مُراسِل صحفي	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
confident	واثق	interview	يُجري مقابلة
producer	منتِج	communicate	يتواصل
article	مقالة	adult	بالغ

## Part (1)

Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good friends. They often meet to chat about • their lives, and their work. They also like to chat about their school days together.

They became friends 15 years ago, at primary school. They all went to Young Eagles Primary School. When they were in Grade 6, they had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together. In it, they wrote about the latest events in school, and in the local area.



"Why do you want to start a school newspaper?" Hatem's mom asked him.

"Well, I think it's important for people to know what's happening around them. Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine all agree," he said.

🚺 يدردشوا بشأن - يتحدثوا عن 🧿 يُصْدِروا 🄞 آخر الأحداث

## Questions with their manifesturers

Read	and	write	(Yes)	or	No	<b>)</b> :

- 1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine became friends at high school. (
- 2. They became friends 15 years ago. (
- 3. They had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together when they were in Grade 6.
- 4. The students wanted to start a newspaper to become famous. SB (
- Hatem's mom told him to produce a newspaper for the school. ( )
- 6. They wrote about the latest events in school only.



## Read and answer the questions:

- 1. Why do Hatem and his friends often meet?
- 2. When did Hatem and his friends become friends?
- 3. When did Hatem and his friends decide to produce a school newspaper?



- 4. What language did the team decide to produce their school newspaper in?
- 5. What did Hatem and his friends write about in the newspaper?
- 6. Why did Hatem want to start a school newspaper?

## unewers

Read and write (Yes) or (No):

2- Yes 3- Yes 4- No 1- No 5- No. 6- No

- Read and answer the questions:
- To chat about their lives, their work and their school days together.
- They became friends 15 years ago.
- In Grade 6.
- They produced the newspaper in English.
- 5. They wrote about the latest events in school, and in the local area.
- 6. He thought it's important for people to know what's happening around them.

## Part (2)

Hatem was the editor ①. He was a good leader, and great at writing. Every week, he asked his team for interesting news stories ②. His job was to decide which stories should be their main stories ②. Hatem read everybody's writing, and checked with ② the teacher to make sure the English was correct. The team then put the pages together, and printed ③ the newspaper for the school.

"When's the newspaper coming out ۞?" the younger children asked them every week. ﴿ وَمَعِنَ الرَّبِيسِيةُ ﴿ وَالتَّمَارِيرِ (القَمِصِ) الرَّئِيسِيةُ ﴿ وَالتَّمَارِيرِ (القَمِصِ) الرّئِيسِيةُ

"Tomorrow, don't worry!" the newspaper team said. واجْغ مع ۞ طَبْع ۞ تُضْدُر ﴾ "Tomorrow, don't worry!" the newspaper team said.

Tarek knew a lot about sports, so he was the sports journalist • in the team. He went to the PE teacher • every week, and asked, "What's happening in sports this week, please?" Tarek reported on • the sports games so everybody at school could read about their successes •. He also went to the school sports day •, and talked to the school's football, volleyball, and basketball teams.

"It's good to have Tarek on the school newspaper," said the PE teacher. "He helps everybody in school take an interest in 6 sport."

🕦 الصحفي الرياضي 🗿 مُعَلِّم التربية البدنية 🔞 كتب تقريرًا عن

🚯 نجاحات - إنجازات 🄞 اليوم الرياضي 🔞 يهتم ۽

Questions with their model enswers	
Read and write (Yes) or (No):	
<ol> <li>Hatem was the editor and he chose the main stories for the newspaper.</li> <li>Tarek was a good leader.</li> <li>Every year, Hatem asked his team for interesting news stories</li> <li>Bassant's job was to decide which stories should be their main</li> </ol>	( ( , (, )
<ul> <li>stories.</li> <li>Hatem read everybody's writing.</li> <li>Tarek knew a lot about sports.</li> <li>Nadine was the sports journalist in the team.</li> <li>Tarek reported on the school sports day.</li> <li>Bassant went to the school sports day.</li> <li>Tarek helps everybody in school take an interest in sport.</li> </ul>	( (. (. (SB) (
Read and answer the questions:	
1. Who was the editor of the newspaper?	
2. What was Hatem's job in the newspaper team?	

- 3. Who gave Tarek information about sports at the school? 4. What was Tarek's job in the newspaper team?
- 5. Who was pleased that Tarek was writing for the school newspaper?
- 6. Why was it good to have Tarek on the school newspaper?

#### Answers

## 1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Ye:	s 2-No	3- No	4- No	5- Yes
6- Ye	s 7- No	8- Yes	9- No	10-Yes

## Read and answer the questions:

- 1. Hatem. Deciding which stories should be their main stories.
- 3. The PE teacher. 4. He was the sports journalist. 5. The PE teacher.
- Because he helped everybody in school take an interest in sport.



S B

## Part (3)

Bassant loved science and the environment, so she often went to science fairs ①. She found out who was doing interesting experiments ②. Bassant encouraged ③ the younger children to recycle ③ the school trash, and motivated ⑤ them to think about how they could help their environment. Once, Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the beach. They looked at the effects of climate change ⑤ there. Bassant and the other children also noticed ② plastic, and other trash, on the beach.



"This is awful. We need to protect our waters and the wildlife there," said Bassant. She thought a lot about the trash on the beach. After the trip, she organized a beach clean-up . It really helped, and the beach was clean again!

🜀 تَغَيُّر المناخِ 🕡 لاحظوا 🔞 الحياة البرية 🥑 نُظَمَّت 🏗 تنظيف

Nadine was really interested • in art, so she spent a lot of time in the art studio • in school, and doing paintings and pottery • outside of school. Her mom was an artist and taught • her a lot about different ways of painting and making art. Nadine reported on art competitions in school. A friend of Nadine's went to the local deaf club •, and she invited Nadine to an art exhibition • there. The exhibition was called "Art is for everybody!" and was very popular. Nadine wrote a report all about it for the school newspaper.



Nadine was the newspaper team's photographer ②, too. Her mom gave her a camera for her eleventh birthday, and showed her how to use it. When there was a news story, Tarek, Hatem, or Bassant called for Nadine, their photographer! القَرْسَم (غرفة الرسم) القَرْسَم (غرفة الرسم) القَرْسَم (عرفة الرسم)

🔾 علْمَت 🗿 نادى الصُمّ 👩 معرض فنىي 🕜 مُصوِّر فوتوغرافىي

227)

## Quartiens with their model enswers

Read and write (Yes) or (No):	
Bassant loved science and the environment.	( )
2. Nadine often went to science fairs.	( .)
3. Bassant found out who was doing interesting experiments.	()
<ol> <li>Bassant encouraged the younger children to think about the environment.</li> </ol>	AB ()
5. Nadine reported on art competitions in school.	AB ()
6. Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the beach.	AB ()
7. Nadine wanted to protect their waters and the wildlife.	()
8. Bassant organized a beach clean-up.	()
9. Nadine was really interested in art.	( .)
10. Bassant spent a lot of time in the art studio in school.	(. )
11. Nadine reported on an art exhibition called "Art is for everybody!"	'AB ()
12. Bassant was doing paintings and pottery outside of school.	()
13. Nadine wrote a report all about art competitions for the school	1
newspaper.	()
14. Nadine was the newspaper team's photographer.	( )
15. Nadine's mom gave her a camera for her tenth birthday.	( . )
Read and answer the questions:	
1. What did Bassant love?	
2. Where did Bassant often go?	
3. What did Bassant encourage the younger children to do?	
	- C
4. What did Bassant organize?	SB
F What was Nading interested in 2	60
5. What was Nadine interested in?	AB

Connect Plus 6 -

#### The Reader

- 6. Where did Nadine spend her time?
- 7. What did Nadine like to do outside of school?
- 8. What did Nadine report on?
- 9. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"?
- 10. What was Nadine's job in the newspaper?
- 11. What did Nadine's mom give her for her eleventh birthday?

### Answers

## 1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- No	3- Yes	4- Yes	5- Yes	6- Yes	7- No	8-	Yes	9- 1	Yes
10- No	11-Yes	12-No	13-Yes	14-Yes	15-No					

### Read and answer the questions:

- 1. She loved science and the environment.
- 2. She often went to science fairs.
- She encouraged them to recycle the school trash and help the environment.
- 4. She organized a beach clean-up.
- 5. She was interested in art.
- 6. In the art studio in school.
- 7. She did paintings and pottery outside of school.
- 8. She reported on art competitions in school.
- 9. At the local deaf club.
- 10. She was the newspaper team's photographer.
- 11. She gave her a camera.



SB

SB

## Part (4)

The team also helped people in the community. For example, a family who lived near the school was sad because their cat, Kitty, was lost. They couldn't find her and were very worried. The newspaper team made a flyer • about Kitty, with a photo of her, and a contact phone number •. They printed it and made copies •. After school, the team went to houses in the area and put flyers in front of the doors. Finally, after three days, a local man rang • the newspaper team. He said that he found a cat that matched • Kitty's features •.



"I think it's Kitty!" he said. Kitty was found.

"Thank you so much!" the family said to the man, and the team, when they had Kitty back home. "You were a great help!"

📵 منشور - نشرة إعلانية 👂 رقم هاتف للتواصل 🔞 نَسَح 🍑 اثْضَل على هاتف 🔞 تُطابق 🔞 مواصفات

## Questions with their model answers

- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
  - 1. A family who lived near the school was sad because their cat, Kitty, was lost.
  - 2. The newspaper team made a flyer about Kitty.
  - 3. After school, the team went to houses in the area and put flyers behind the doors.
  - 4. A local man rang the newspaper team after five days. (...)
  - 5. The team helped to find a lost dog called Reggie.
- Read and answer the questions:
  - 1. What did the team do?



#### The Reader

- 2. What did the newspaper team make?
- 3. What did the local man say?
- 4. What did the local man do when he found Kitty?



#### Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes 2- Yes	3- No	4- No	5- No
---------------	-------	-------	-------

- Read and answer the questions:
- 1. The team helped people in the community.
- 2. A flyer about Kitty, with a photo of her, and a contact phone number.
- 3. He said that he found a cat that matched Kitty's features.
- 4. After three days, he rang the newpaper team.

## Part (5)

Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve. One week in October, the team were getting the newspaper ready • to print, as usual •. They were very excited because they had some great stories. The school volleyball team was in the finals • of the National Volleyball Games, and Tarek was writing a news report • about it. Bassant was writing a report about an important local scientist who came to the school to give a talk •. Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition • in town.

🚺 تجهيز الصحيفة(الجريدة) 👂 كالمعتلد 📵 نهائيات 🚯 تقزير إخباري 🤄 يلمّي كلمة(محاضرة) 💮 معرض تصوير فوتوغرافي



That day, the team stayed later • at school to get the newspaper ready and printed. Nadine had all her photos ready, too.

Suddenly, Hatem went to check 2 the paper for printing.

"Oh no!" he said. "We don't have enough paper!"

"I know! What about Mr Medhat? Can't we ask him for more paper?" said Bassant.

"No, he's away on holiday," said Tarek.



🕕 مكث لوقت متأخر 🔞 يتفقد

"What shall we do? I'm really worried," said Bassant.

"I know. I'm worried, too," said Tarek.

"I have an idea!" said Nadine. "On social media, people don't always write a lot of words, they use videos to tell stories. Why don't we make videos of our news stories?" Hatem said, "That's a good idea."

"Let's go and talk to Mrs Basma to see if that's OK," said Nadine.



## Dear then with their model ensures

## Read and write (Yes) or (No):

- 1. The team never faced any problems while printing their newspaper. ( )
- 2. Tarek was writing a news report about the school volleyball team. ( )
- 3. Nadine was writing a report about an important local scientist. (
- 4. Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition in town.

( )

Connect Plus 6 -

231

#### The Reader

- 5. The newspaper team had some great stories, but there wasn't any paper.
- Nadine had the idea to make videos instead of trying to print the stories.

## Read and answer the questions:

- 1. What did the team not have enough of to print the newspaper?
- SB

- 2. What was Bassant doing?
- 3. What was Nadine doing?

- 4. Why did the important local scientist come to school?
- 5. Where was Mr Medhat?
- 6. Who was worried?
- 7. What was Nadine's idea to solve the problem?

## Ainswers

## Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- Yes 5- Yes 6- Yes

## Read and answer the questions:

- 1. They didn't have enough paper!
- 2. She was writing a report about an important local scientist.
- Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition in town.
- 4. To give a talk.
- 5. He was away on holiday.
- 6. Bassant and Tarek.
- 7. To make videos of the news stories on social media.

## Part (6

Bassant and Nadine found Mrs Basma.

"Excuse me, Mrs Basma, we have a problem with printing our newspaper," said Bassant, "Can we use a phone to film our stories?"

Mrs Basma was enthusiastic 9. "I think that's a great idea," she said, "and it will make it easier for the children who find it difficult to read to follow the stories, too."

The girls went back to tell the boys - they were very excited 9.

🕻 يُصَوَّر(فيديو) 😢 متحمُسة 🚯 متحمُسين

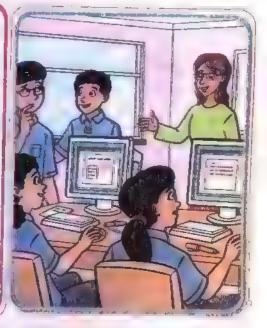


Mrs Basma came to talk to the team. She said, "I've had an idea! Why don't you put your written stories and your videos on the school website o, too? Let me know when the videos are ready in the morning, and I'll show you how to do that."

The newspaper team were very happy, but nervous @, too. "We don't really know how to make videos," said Tarek.

"Well," said Hatem, "everybody knows this is the first time we're using videos - they will understand "

ر موؤوالكتروندي 🙆 متوترين - قُلِمُين





In the morning, Mrs Basma helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website. The younger students came to school and started looking around.

"Hi," they said. "Where is the newspaper, please? We'd like to read that article about our class." They looked a bit worried o, but the newspaper team made them feel better.

"Just go to the school website," said Nadine.
"All the stories are there."

🕦 بدوا قلقین بعض انشیء



At break time 0, the younger students went excitedly 0 to the computer room and turned on the computers. They found the newspaper website quickly.

"The videos are a bit unclear o!" said one student.

"And I can't hear their voices very well," said another.

"Just be kind," said their teacher. "This is the first time they've made videos. It will get easier for them. They wrote the stories, too, so you can read the news articles if you want."

🚺 وفت الفُسحة(الاستراحة) 👂 بحماس 🤞 غير واضح



## Questions with their model answers



- 1. Bassant and Nadine found Mrs Basma.
- Bassant and Nadine wanted to use phone to film their stories.
- Mrs Basma was enthusiastic.

The Re	
<ol> <li>Filming the stories will make it harder for the children who find it difficult to read.</li> </ol>	()
5. Mrs Basma was a local news reporter.	()
<ol><li>The PE teacher helped the team to put the articles and the video on the school website.</li></ol>	os ()
7. The newspaper team were very happy, but nervous, too.	( )
<ol><li>It was the third time for the team to make videos on social media</li></ol>	i. ( )
<ol><li>Mrs Basma helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website.</li></ol>	()
<ol> <li>At break time, the younger students went excitedly to the library turned on the computers.</li> </ol>	
11. The younger students found the newspaper website quickly.	( )
2. The first time the team made a news report on video, it wasn't	B ()
Read and answer the questions:	
What was the newspaper team's new idea?	
Who supported the newspaper team's new idea?	
What was the problem with the team's first video?	SB
Where was the school newspaper?	
How did Mrs Basma help the students?	

## Answers

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes	2- Yes	3- Yes	4- No	5- No	6- No
7- Yes	8- No	9- Yes	10- No	11-Yes	12-Yes

6. When did the younger students go to the computer room?



#### The Reader

## Read and answer the questions:

- 1. Making videos of their news stories on social media.
- 2. Mrs. Basma supported the idea.
- It was a bit unclear!
- 4. On the school website.
- 5. She helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website.
- At break time.

ater in the year, it did get easier for the newspaper team. They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website. Everybody at the school loved watching their news reports.

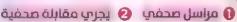
The local newspaper in their town heard about what the children were doing.

A reporter o came to interview o them.

"This is awesome!" said Hatem, "Now someone is reporting on us, and we're the news!"

'Yes," said Nadine. "It's very exciting."





The newspaper team's success was good for the school, too. Many of the younger children became motivated o to create something themselves.

Some children decided to write news reports in English, and others made videos. This helped them all to communicate a better. They became more confident o in writing and speaking in English. Some of them thought about a career in television, or at a newspaper, for when they got older.

🚹 مُحَفِّز 🖸 يتواصل 🕄 واثق





Now, Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are all adults 0, and they all work in the news.

Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo. Tarek loves television, and he now works as a producer of for a sports program of the second s

Bassant works as a science reporter and writes about climate change. Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.

And that shows you how important what we do at school is for our future!

ead and write (Vas) or (Na)



🛈 بالعون 😢 مُنتِح 🔞 برنامج رياضي

## Territora with their model perswers

	reduction write (165) of (160).	
-		
1. 7	The newspaper team's success was bad for the school	(

- 2. Many of the younger children became motivated to create
- something themselves.
- 3. Some children decided to write news reports in French.
- 4. The younger children became more confident in writing and speaking in English.
- 5. Some of the younger children thought about a career in television, or at a newspaper, for when they got older.
- 6. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are all adults now, and they all work in the news.
- work in the news.

  7. The local newspaper in their town heard about what the children
- were doing.
- 8. A doctor came to interview them.
- 9. Hatem is a famous footballer.
- 10. Hatem writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo.
- 11. Tarek loves television, and he now works as a producer for a sports program.
- 12. Bassant works as a scientist.

Connect Plus 6 -

237

#### The Reader

- 13. Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.
- 14. Bassant works as a science reporter and writes about climate change.
- 15. Hatem is a famous journalist now.

## Read and answer the questions:

- 1. Who heard about what the children were doing?
- 2. Who came to interview them?
- 3. How was the newspaper team's success good for the school?
- 4. What is Hatem's job now?
- 5. What is Tarek's job now?
- 6. What does Bassant do?
- 7. What does Nadine do?

### Answers

## Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No	2- Yes	3- No	4- Yes	5- Yes	6- Yes	7- Yes	8-	No	9-	No
10-Yes	11-Yes	12-No	13-Yes	14-Yes	15-Yes					

## 2 Read and answer the questions:

- 1. The local newspaper in their town.
- 2. A reporter came to interview them.
- 3. They became motivated to create something themselves.
- 4. Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo.
- 5. He works as a producer for a sports program.
- 6. She works as a science reporter and writes about climate change.
- Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.



## **Listening Scripts**



Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see many countries. My mom said "yes"! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very organized, but that wasn't a problem. I looked up the best places to visit on the internet before we left.



Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep and chickens. Amina grew fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas. Monir and Menna had some bees, so they could have honey.



Junko Tabei was a famous and brave adventurer who did every challenge she could. She loved climbing mountains, and she was the first woman to climb Mount Everest. She was born in 1939. She trained hard on the mountains from the age of ten. In 1975, she finally reached the top of Mount Everest. She broke the record for being the first woman to get to the top of Everest for some time.

#### **Listening Scripts**



Drinking dirty water can cause disease because dirty water has a lot of bacteria in it. To prevent yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. Store fresh food in a refrigerator or a cool, dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh, and it won't start to decompose.



Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes turns to speak, and takes time to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an interest in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.



Hi, I'm Shady, and this is my goals journal. I'm excited about this month, i have planned lots of things I want to do. I'm anxious about my history and math tests at the end of the month. The tests are going to be more difficult than last month, but I'm determined to do well. There's a charity sale at school in two weeks, and I want to take part. Books, cakes, and toys will be sold to raise money for charity. I'm taking my old toys.





Second Term

Revision Tests
Answer Key
Listening Scripts

# Contents

Part 1 Unit (5) Go explore!	3
Unit (5) Test (1)	11
Unit (6) Breaking news!	14
Unit (6) Test (2)	20
Unit (7) Making a new world	23
Unit (7) Test (3)	29
Unit (8) I can do It!	32
Unit (8) Test (4)	38
Part 2 Revision Tests	41)
Part 3 Listening Scripts	69
Part 4 Answer Key	74



## Unit 5 Revision



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### compass - winds - Astronomy - reliable - navigator

Ibn Majid was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and astronomy.

① was important because the stars at night helped sailors to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the , the monsoons, and the stars in the sky. As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master ③ . He used a , but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use.

## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### picked - woke - took - dropped - travel

Hi! My name's Lucy. I decided to ① around the world and see as many countries as possible. I decided to go to Morocco first. My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom ② me up early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I ③ up a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi ④ us off at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!

**जिल्ला** 



## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

## athlete - remove - crutch - break - along

Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a world-record-holding

. He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. But one day, he was traveling 

the road on his motorbike when he had an accident. The doctors told him that they had to remove part of his leg. Omar had to learn to use a 

and then a wheelchair. Omar learned about two important athletes who are also disabled and have achieved amazing achievements. This inspired him, and he began to think positively and to train hard to 

... a world record.

# O

## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### sailed - across - walked - inspired - ski

Matthieu Tordeur is a world-record holding explorer At the age of 27 years and 40 days, he became the youngest person to ①

to the South Pole in Antarctica, alone and without any help. Matthieu was born in Rouen, France, on December 4, 1991. As a young man, Matthieu was ②

by famous explorers like Ranulph Fiennes, Ben Saunders, and Jean-Louis Étienne. After finishing his education, Matthieu went on many journeys across deserts, mountains, and snow. He cycled ③

Europe and China, and he ④

across the Atlantic Ocean. Then he decided to ski to the South Pole



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### astronauts - gravity - spaceship - clean - wipes

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything 1

The team can't use cleaning liquids for cleaning as there's less

a, so they use greaning wipes. There's no shower or bath in the

3 , so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too.

The 
sometimes wear the same clothes for a long time

in the spaceship. Often, cirtly clothes are then thrown away.



## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### away - frightening - shadow - reef - shape

One day, Little Fish was swimming with her friends in the wide, blue sea.

They were playing games in the cora.

and having fun.

They could see their families, who weren't far 2

. Later

that day, while they were playing, they saw a dark 3

moving towards them at was earry afternoon, but suddenly the sea looked

dark and 4 fine shadow was the snape of a huge shark

with a big mouth and a long strong fail.



## Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### challenge - diving - set - wheelchair - motorbike

Ashraf: Hi, Hadı. Do you know the story of Faisal Al-Mosawi?

**Hadi**: Hi, Ashraf No I don't What is his story?

Ashraf : In 2005, Faisa! Al-Mosawi was a talented football player.

However, after a car accident, he couldn't walk, and he had

to use a ① . He was 20 years old then.

Onit	
Hadi	: What happened after that?
Ashraf	: Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a ② So. in 2009, he learned scuba ③
Hadi	: Wow! What an inspiring person! Did he succeed?
Ashraf	: Yes. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was 4 in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability
Hadi	: What an amazing story! Thanks, Ashraf
8 Put th	he words in the correct order to make sentences:
1. the - sea	oooks - many - did - How - Ibn Majid?
**********	? · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3. on - in S	Spain - went - trip - I - a walking.
	e - did - pick - you - What - up?
	- You'll - up - some - American - pick.
	Which - did - records - break - Omar Hegazy?

7. ls - interesting - a - very - man - Omar Hegazy.

रिहत्ता 2

→ Step Ahead

8. He - job - a banker - had - as - a good.

.....

9. you - off - the airport - at - Who - saw?

10. hours - He - the swim - completed - in - eight!

11. travelers - did - he - How - sea - help?

12. gives - Ehab - others - talks - to - inspire.

13. football - Faisal Al-Mosawi - talented - player - was - a.

.

14. an astronaut - Would - to - you - be - like?

15. Astronauts - physically - to - be - strong - need.

......

16. astronauts - do - How - in space - keep - fit?

17. sleeping bags - attached - are - to - Their - a wall.

a train

18. were - What - the - challenges - the trip - of?

?

19. doctors - for their - fitness - Astronauts - are tested - by.

20. is - the - cleaned - spaceship - How?

#### Unit 5

## Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. A (fisherman navigator swimmer) is a person who can find their way at sea.
- (Astronomy Navigating Exploring) is the study of everything in space
   the planets and the stars.
- 3. The people who work on a ship or boat are (astronauts pilots sailors).
- 4. The (countryside coast peninsula) is a piece of land with the sea all around it, except for one side.
- 5. He is (worried fascinated afraid) by the sea. He loves it so much.
- 6. Navigate means finding your way at (sea countryside peninsula).
- 7. To (navigate fascinate explore) means to try to find out things, and ask questions, even when we already have everything we need.
- 8. Ali is very (lazy intelligent weak). He always gets high marks in exams.
- 9. (Fins Crutches Sticks) are long rubber things to put on your feet to help you swim faster.
- 10. A crutch is something to put under your arm to help you (swim walk sleep) better.
- 11. Our teacher always (orders disappoints inspires) us. He motivates and guides us.
- 12. My friends and I tried to (hold take catch) our breath underwater for as long as we could as a competition.
- 13. He is a (bad talented terr to e) football player. He is very good.
- 14. Astronauts are taught how to fix a spaceship and how to (do have has) experiments.
- 15. The students are shown how to (go have g ve) first aid.
- Jana always organizes her books and pens on her desk. She is very (tidy - messy - untidy).
- 17. Hossam is very (sleepy ambitious messy). He dreams of being an astronaut.
- 18. He (cycled shipped sailed) across the Atlantic Ocean.



- 19. Sara and Huda were (shouting chatting realizing) while having a walk. They discussed a lot of things together.
- 20. She (whispered shouted screamed) to her friend so that no one could hear her.
- 21. He (broke removed hit) a world record two years ago.
- 22. Every one of us should (motivate follow inspire) his dreams.

# GRAMMAR REVISION

## 10 Choose the correct answer: (Phrasal Verbs)

- 1. I don't enjoy (seeing off filling in) forms.
- 2. Hesham (looked up put away) the information on the internet.
- 3. Sometimes the traffic (wakes me up picks it up) in the morning.
- 4. We (figured out dropped off) Mr Bashir at the train station.
- 5. I (put away woke up) my clothes and tidied my room this morning.
- 6. Sherif (picke'd up filled in) some Spanish when he visited Spain last month.
- 7. Laila quickly (dropped off figured out) how to use her new compass.
- 8. We're going to (see off look up) our grandparents at the airport tomorrow.
- 9. My uncle filled (in at on) a form when he was applying for a job.
- 10. After we finished our vacation in the countryside, my uncle dropped us (in off of) at the train station.
- 11. He figured the answer (on out in) on his own.
- 12. My friend, Adel, saw me (off of up) at the airport when I was traveling to Tunisia.
- 13. My dad woke me (on out up) early to pray on time.
- 14. I put my hiking shoes (away ways) after I returned home.
- 15. We looked (at up of) the road to the restaurant on the internet before we left.

AB

AB

AR

AB

#### Unit 5

- 16. We (figured looked filled) out lots of new information in the science lesson.
- 17. She (puts picks wakes) lots of new things when she helps her mom in the kitchen.
- 18. Mom always tells me to (put grop see) away my books after finishing my homework.

## Choose the correct answer: (Present Simple Passive)

- 1. A new player is (teaching teach taught) many things by the coach.
- 2. Astronauts are (tested testing test) by doctors for their fitness.
- 3. Astronauts' sleeping bags are (attaching attached attach) to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep.
- 4. If you pass the tests, then you are (chose chosen choose) for the next mission.
- 5. The chef is (teaching taught teach) the new cooks how to cook new meals.
- 6. (Are Does Is) your suitcase packed for the trip?
- 7. The house (is cleaning is cleaned cleans) every day.
- 8. The report is (write wrote written) by the team leader.
- 9. The car is (fixing fix fixed) regularly by the mechanic.
- 10. This delicious cake (is baked is baking baked) by my grandma.
- 11. The movie tickets (is sold are selling are sold) online.
- 12. A newspaper delivery boy (delivers delivering is delivered) the newspaper early in the morning.
- 13. The newspaper is (deliver delivering delivered) early in the morning.
- 14. The room is (cleaned cleans cleaning) by the hotel staff.
- 15. The hotel staff (is cleaned cleans cleaning) the room.
- 16. The photographer (take is taken takes) the photos.
- 17. The photos (are taking are taken takes) by the photographer.
- 18. (Do Are Is) the paintings shown in the art gallery?
- 19. Is the report (review reviewing reviewed) by the editor?
- 20. (Is Are Does) the concert arranged well?



## Unit 5 Test 1

Yotal 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. In 2009, Faisal Al-Mosawi learned scuba (swimming diving sailing driving).
- 2. He broke the world (record mark standard chart) and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes.
- 3. He broke a record that was (left built sit set) in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability.
- 4. Faisal continues to scuba dive, and he (carries trains inspires moves) young people by giving talks.
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

### Navigate - fascinated - sailors - travel - seaman

Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid? He is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. Ibn Majid was the first Arab and he learned how to navigate the seas.

means to find your way around. Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was 3 by the sea. He loved to listen

to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great

4

### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Ibn Battuta was a famous Arab explorer who wrote a book about his travels. He was born in 1304 in Tangier in Morocco. He made his first journey when he was 21 years old, when he set off on a pilgrimage to Makkah. At first, he hated travelling because he was lonely. However, during the next 28 years, he travelled over 120,000 kilometres.



### Test 1

Ibn Battuta stayed in Makkah for three years. After Makkah, he travelled through Turkey, Russsia and India, where he worked for a king for seven years. In 1342, the king sent him to the most powerful king in the world, the king of China, but his beat serk which it was saimly through a storm. However, Ibn Battuta survived are an 1344, he reached China and traveled to the capital city. Beijing He spent several years in China before he traveled home, passing through Damascus. Cairo and Spain.

During the last few years of his life, he write a book about his travels called "Travels in Asia and Africa". Ibn Battist indied in 13c8

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The undelined word "set off means (stayed traveled walked ran)
- 2. Ibn Battuta made his first journey in (1325 1342 1344 1304)
- 3. The passage mentioned (five six seven eight) countries

### Answer these questions:

- 4. Why did Ibn Battuta, at first, hate travelling?
- 5. How long did Ibn Battuta nve?

### The Reader The Sills Road

(4Ms)

(2Ms)

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

,

- 1. Silk was only made in China at first
- 2. The Silk Road was important only for buying and selling goods.
- 3. Constantinople is now known as China
- 4. Many towns along the routes became rich. (
- Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. Where did the Silk Road start?
- 6. What goods did people from Europe sell?





### Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

(3Ms)

- 1. The plants are (watered watering water waters) twice a week by the farmer.
- 2. Ali looked (out at up in) on the internet to know the best historical places to visit in Morocco.
- 3. Are the books (returning returned return returns) to the library on time?
- 4. I proced (in up on out) anot of English phrases while I was in Canada on vacation.
- 5. Where the sentence is may more plats the winter clothes (out on of away).
- 6. The difficult questives are (answering answer answered were answered) by the teacher

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. a buck Matthieu about a fventires wrote his.
- 2, ran away When they deer got closer, the.
- 3. walked Ibn Majid the seas to and oceans explore.

### Write an email an email of (70) words to your friend Basim: (5Ms)

Tell him about a complete to a carboes place. Tell him when you went what did you do and see there. Your email address is hosam@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is basim@school.net

**बितका** 

# Unit 6 Revision



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### proud - director - sports - fantastic - prizes

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school (1) , Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out (2) . She said, "I'm so (3) of all of you – you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home tired, but happy. Our (4) day was amazing!



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### calculations - Grades - articles - do - have

I'm Hassan. My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or math. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do 3. The children also love our school newspaper because there are 4 about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too!



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### get - singer - journalist - press - meetings

My name is Waleed Bashir and I'm a sports ① . I love my job because I love sport! Every morning, I go to the newspaper office and I have with my editor and other journalists. Then we decide which games I need to watch. If it's a football game, I arrive about three hours before the game starts. Journalists from television, radio, and newspapers sit together in a place that's called the ③ box. We all chat while we ④ ready. During the game, I make a lot of notes.

पिटाता र

14



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### presenters - breaking - editor - journalists - reports

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist. I love my job. It's fun, and every day is different because we don't know what news will come in. There are many kinds of . I'm a news journalist, so I write the enews - that is, the news as it starts to happen. I write my news from home, but I can get anywhere in the city if there's a story there. All the news stories are sent to the by midday. In the afternoon, I start researching stories, interviewing people, and preparing for the next day.



## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### investigate - cleaned - cleans - got - protect

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin at their home. Last year, when she visited them, things were different. When Nadine to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too. She wanted to do something to the river, so she took her uncle to see it. He asked her to write some notes and take some photos. Then he gave her notes to a reporter and sent him to the problem. At the end, the problem was solved, and the river will be up and the fish will be healthy again.



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### decorated - sell - instruments - choir - sold

Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school hall, and tickets were 1 on the school website. Mr Amir's class 2 the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical 3 , including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The 4 has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music!



### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:



### awesome - challenges - luck - skills - Well done

- A : Mom, I got an A in my test!
- B ; Wow! 1 ......! That's 2
- A : What 3 did you learn on your trip?
- : I learned how to cook on a camping stove, and how to take better photos.
- A : I didn't pass my driving test. I was really nervous.
- : Oh well, you're a great driver. Better 4 next time!
- A : What were the 6 of the trip?
- : Well, I really missed my family. And it rained a lot that was bad!

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. a printing on made press are Newspapers.
  - (III)
- 2. at our school Every year, sale have a garage we.
- 3. a small a hutch He house called lives in.
- 4. raise Does your class money for like to local charities?

- ?
- 5. are tracked don't They so they get lost.
- 6. Is safe enough the designed to be area?
- 7. all watched cheetahs the time aren't The.

- 8. a Who doesn't giant love panda?
  - ?
- 9. visiting I'm my grandparents weekend that.
  - ......
- 10. As you very exciting is see, my job can.
- 11. my love sport I love job I because!
- 12. posted by you Were the videos of any?

- **13.** won't I to come be No, able.
- 14. near a peaceful was place It a river.
- 15. I'm so of proud you all of.

# Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. A/An (editor volunteer teacher) is someone who works for free.
- 2. (Equipment Hutch Craft) is a set of tools or things you need to do something.
- 3. The (book novel newspaper) is a printed paper that gives you news.
- 4. The person who chooses the news stories is the (editor volunteer journalist).
- 5. The (flat hole hutch) is a small house for a rabbit.
- 6. Being (careless responsible irresponsible) means being someone others can rely on.

### Unit 6

- 7. A/An (vaccination equipment care) is a medicine that protects a person or animal from a disease.
- 8. (Local National International) means related to more than one country.
- 9. (News stories Breaking news News reports) is new information about an event that is happening now.
- 10. The study, or job, of writing articles for newspapers and magazines is called (journalism newspaper journalist).
- 11. When you are describing a person who likes talking to and being with other people, you call him (lonely intelligent sociable).
- 12. The (company staff friends) are the people who work at a place, for example, a hotel.
- 13. To (investigate promise pollute) is to find out the facts about something.
- 14. To (save change promise) is to say that something will be done.
- 15. A (house barn boat) is a building on a farm for animals to sleep in.
- 16. The time in the year when the leaves fall from the trees is the (fall summer winter).
- 17. The (fall summer winter) is the hottest season of the year.
- 18. He (grows keeps walks) the sheep in the barn.

# GRAMMAR REVISION

# 10 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Those letters (write is written are written) by my sister.
- 2. The trip will be (organizing organized organize) by a travel company.
- 3. He is (washed washing wash) the car right now.
- 4. The car is (washed washing wash) right now.
- 5. Who was the message (send sent sending) to?





- 6. The painting is (like liking liked) by many visitors.
- 7. The meal (is prepared was prepared prepares) by the chef an hour ago.
- 8. The chef (were prepared prepared was preparing) the meal an hour ago.
- 9. The movie will (watched watch be watched) by millions of people.
- 10. The messages (is sent were sent send) yesterday.
- 11. The picture was (painted is painted will be painted) by the artist.
- 12. The classroom (is decorated was decorated will be decorated) by the students tomorrow.
- 13. The giant pandas (was put are put were put) in danger some years ago.
- 14. (Were Was Is) any of the videos posted by you?
- 15. Much of their habitat (were destroyed was destroying was destroyed) to build new homes.
- 16. The house was (built build builds) many years ago.
- 17. The house (will be sold was sold is sold) last month.
- 18. The problems were (solve solved solving) by the expert.
- 19. The homework wasn't (finishing finish finished) on time.
- 20. When (was were is) the tickets bought?
- 21. How was the problem (solved solving sc' )?
- 22. The new bridge (will be built will build will be . ild) by the end of 2025.
- 23. The report will not be (finishing finished finish) early.
- 24. (Does Is Will) the package be delivered tomorrow?
- 25. The message will be (sent send sending) as soon as possible.
- 26. The dishes will (washed wash be washed) after lunch.
- 27. My (brother's brothers brother) car is blue.
- 28. The (teacher teacher's teachers) instructions were clear.
- 29. My (sister's sisters sister) birthday is next week.
- 30. The (student's students student) backpack is on the floor.

Verm 7





### يص الاستماع موجود أخر ا<mark>لكتاب.</mark>



### Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. Cheetahs lived in India until the 1950s, but then starty, appeared disappeared showed up revealed).
- 2. Eight cheetahs were (provided presented introduced brought) to a big park in India, Kuno National Park
- 3. The Indian people are very (pleased sad unhappy displeased) to have these animals back in their country
- 4. Cheetahs aren't watched all the time that they are left untracked tracked unnoticed), so they don't get lost
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

### party - bad - invite - fantastic - pity

Farah : Hi, Jana. I've got some great news. My parerus have agreed

to let me have a party for my birthday!

Jana : Oh, wow! That's 1 news Alnen's your bitnoay?

Farah : My birthday's next month i can 2 ali my

friends.

Jana : That's great! I'm so pleased for you. What date is it?

Farah: It's on Saturday, September 18th Can you come?

Jana : No, I won't be able to come That's a 3 lim

visiting my grandparents that weekend

Farah : Oh. no! That's too 4 Let's do something

together the weekend before.

Jana : That's a good idea.





### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

future will probably build cities in space. These cities will be large and this points lightly e will record work there. It will be a fantastic way of the points and dangers. One of the biggest probable to the points and dangers. One of the biggest probable to the points are parened oxygen to breathe, but there is no out to space. That is with their espace cities will need their own oxygen soundly. To so we this problem oxygen could be sent to space cities from a the point of the provide us with the oxygen we breathe on the provide us with the oxygen we breathe on the provide us with the oxygen we breathe on the provide us with the oxygen in space.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. There is no air there are too many people there is fresh air).
- 2. (People Plants Animats Birds) provide oxygen on Earth.
- 3. The at record more there refers to the (Earth space cities trees moon).

# Answer these questions:

- 4. A constraint to be built?
- 5. What kind of life will it be?

### . . .

The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- 1. Hatem Tarek 3a. sant and Natime became friends at high school.
- 2. Hatem was the sports journalist.
- 3. They had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together when they were in Grade 6.

### Test 2

4. Nadine's friend invited her to an art exhibition.





Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- Who was a good leader?
- 6. What did Nadine like to do outside of school?





### Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. (Were Does Is) the area designed to be safe enough for the pandas?
- 2. The book (were written was written was writing) by a famous author.
- 3. The tickets (will are were) be sold out quickly, so get them soon!
- 4. The cake (is eating is eaten are eaten) by the children at the party.
- 5. Where was the meeting (finished finish be finished)?
- 6. (Alis' Ali's Ali Alis) bicycle is red and shiny.



### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3IVIS)

- 1. animals are in the Cheetans the fastest world.
- 2. in the past travelers use did Wny camels?

3. the - habitats - People - of pandas - didn't - protect.



Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A sports day at your school"



planned - took part - football - volleyball - basketball - running - jump





# Unit 7 Parieto



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### paths - safe - invention - encourage - lights

A large town is trying to be more environmentally-friendly. To ①
more people to cycle instead of drive cars, it wants to build roads that are
and have good lighting. Bikes don't have strong lights, like cars, so the ③
of glow-in-the-dark bike ④
would be great for that town. It would help the bikes a lot.



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### bacteria - filter - problems - prevented - diseases

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves caused by dirty water. A can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### loop - birdseed - gatepost - birdfeeders - knot

One morning, Rania was in her yard. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled his ①

Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds. He loved feeding the birds, but he hurt his leg. Rania decided to help Mr Hamdy. She put a rope around the ②

, and tied a ③

to make one big loop. She gave him some ④

to feed the birds. She showed him where to pull on the rope to make the birdfeeders move.

रिक्त र



# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### mint - better - toothpaste - teeth - good

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean were important to them, so they invented a type of . They mixed salt, flowers, , and pepper into a paste. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as as modern toothpaste!

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### solar - fit - environment - Cyclists - paths

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel; it keeps you ①

and it's good for the ②

. In some countries, people are using a which glows in the dark. These paths are called "glow-in-the-dark bike paths". These paths store solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the paths glow softly. ④

can see where they are going in the dark. These paths are safe, and they're good for the environment!

# 6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

### Ancient - magazines - Egypt - competition - machine

Ms Samira: If you join a science ① ...., what would you invent

and why?

Nagwa: Can I look online for ideas?

Ms Samira: Yes, you can. You can look in ② , too!

Reem: Well, if I entered a science competition, I'd design a time

3 . I'd love to travel to a different time in history.

Nagwa: That's a great idea. If you designed a time machine, where

would you go?

Term 2

24

Step Ahead

: Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know. Lara : If I went in a time machine, I'd go to 4 Egypt! Reem I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: AB 1. help - him - Wael - to - teacher - asked - his. 2. read - told - page 48 - Mrs Hala - him - to. 3. put - Mom - bike - his - away - told - to - Tarek. A.B 4. the - me - door - asked - to - Hani - close. 5. countries - Filter straws - in many - diseases - have prevented. 6, the pyramids - I'd like - built - they - to learn - how. 7. is - the - about - interactive - What - exhibition? \* 8. a time - what - would - I wonder - machine - look like. 9. does - type of - What - the camera - fish - like - look? . 10. Mazen - does - go - decide - Where - to? 7 41. a driver - them - don't need - to control - Driverless - cars.

12. many - Ancient Egyptian - still use - inventions - We - today.

### Unit 7

- 13. is project What the about school?
- 14. They've for existed thousands years of.
- 15. worked how understood They body the human.
- 16. used A plow and turn was the soil to dig.
- 17. to help them animals Egyptians used The Ancient.
- 18. help him Mr Hamdy using What is walk to?

# 8 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. The (edit edible audio) cutlery is something that you can eat.
- 2. The (filter filler failure) straw can stop people getting sick.
- 3. To (decompose compose gather) means to break into small parts.
- 4. To (prevent happen occur) means to stop something from happening.
- 5. Plastic doesn't (melt decompose compose), so it stays in the ground for a long time.
- 6. Filter straws solve problems caused by (clean pure dirty) water.
- 7. People are using a new material for bike paths which (stores loses gives) solar energy during the day.
- 8. A (careless driverless painless) object is something without a driver.
- 9. (Interactive Automatic Programmed) means something you can touch and move.
- 10. The planetarium is a place where you can see stars and (plants planets fish).
- 11. To control means to (follow observe direct) something or somebody.

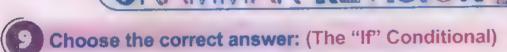


26

7

- 12. Ancient Egyptians (mixed threw took) salt with other things to make a type of toothpaste.
- 13. Ancient Egyptians used herbs to stop (paint plane pain) and diseases.
- 14. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint, and pepper to make a (toothache toothless toothpaste).
- 15. (Water Plastic Plants) can have a very bad effect on sea life.
- 16. A (creative boring realistic) person is someone who uses their imagination to produce new ideas.
- 17. Vegetables are a/an (unhealthy not healthy healthy) food that can be grown in the garden.
- 18. To (uncover cover control) means to place or put something over an object for protection.





- 1. If we (go went) to Aswan, (we'd visit we visit) the Temple of Philae.
- 2. What (would do) you invent if you (are were) a scientist?
- 3. They (wouldn't don't) need a driver if (they'c new they had) a driverless car.
- 4. If (we'd stopped we stopped) buying plastic, we (wouldn't don't) make so much plastic pollution.
- 5. I (learn would learn) the guitar if I (could learn learn) any musical instrument.
- 6. Where (did would) you go if you (can could) go anywhere?
- 7. If I had more money, I (must would can) travel all over the world.
- 8. If I (live living lived) in Paris, I would speak French fluently.
- 9. If she studied harder, she (would must may) pass her exams easily.
- 10. What would you do if you (finding find found) a lost dog?



AB

AB

AD

AD

### Unit 7

- 11. If I were you, I (can't wouldn't mustn't) take that job.
- 12. He would get better marks if he (attended attends attend) all his classes.
- 13. If I (hasn't haven't didn't) eat so much, I wouldn't feel sick now.
- 14. He (must would can) be happier if he didn't 'ose his job
- 15. If they had a car, they (could must can) v sit us more often
- 16. Adham (can't won't wouldn't) need an umbrella if it didn't rain
- 17. (Can Would Will) you go out if it were sunny tomorrow?
- 18. I would help you more if you (asked ask asking) me nicely.
- 19. If I had wings, I (can will could) fly over the mountains
- 20. We could finish the project on time if everyone (help helps)
- 21. She said she (would will must) give me a call if she found my phone.

# 10 Choose the correct answer: (as adjective as)

- 1. She is (like as to) tall as her brother
- 2. Their house is as beautiful (as is like) the one in the picture.
- 3. His new phone isn't as (faster fastest fast) as his old one.
- 4. The movie was just (as funny as as funny funny) | expected.
- 5. They are not as (experience experiences experienced) as the other team.
- 6. He (is isn't as) as old as his father
- 7. The cake is (delicious as delicious as as delicious) I expected.
- 8. My sister is as intelligent (like is as) a genius
- 9. The mountain is as (high higher highest) as the clouds.
- 10. The cat is as (cutest the cutest cute) as a baby.



28

# Unit 7 Test 3



### نص الاستماع موجود أخر الكتاب.

# Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. We all know that (swimming cycling walking jumping) is a good way to travel.
- 2. In some countries people are using a new material for bike paths which (fades hides darkens glows) in the dark.
- 3. These paths store (solar chemical electrical kinetic) energy during the day.
- 4. These paths enable (drivers sailors cyclists pilots) to see where they are going in the dark.
- 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

### greenhouse - tiles - fuels - fossil - climate

Many countries still make electricity using ① fuels like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other ② gases, which are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases cause ③ . change and air pollution. A company has created special floor ④ that create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored.

# Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Hi! I'm Amir. I recently read an article about pollution and its impact on the environment, and it got me thinking about how important it is for us to take action. Pollution is extremely <u>harmful</u> to our planet. It makes the air smell bad and makes it hard to breathe. The water gets polluted too, and it's bad for fish and other animals. Pollution represents a significant

Verm

### Test 3

threat to our planet, harming habitats, wildlife, and even our own health. But we can make a difference! Simple steps like reducing waste, recycling, and using eco-friendly products can help reduce pollution. We should plant more trees to help stop pollution and keep the Earth clean. Let's spread awareness and encourage others to join us in protecting our environment. Together, we can create a cleaner and healthier world!

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Pollution is extremely (helpful useful harmful careful) to our planet.
- 2. It makes the air smell bad and makes it hard to (breathe eat read write).
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "harmful" is (useful dangerous unsafe stressful).

# (B)

### Answer these questions:

- 4. What does pollution represent?
- 5. What can help reduce pollution?

### The Reader Transportation Today

(4Ms)

### A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- The Silk Road became less important when people started to transport goods by sea.
- 2. In the past, the journey by sea from Asia, around Africa to Europe, was short and safe.
- 3. The Suez Canal is 2,000 kilometers long.
- 4. Today, about 19,000 cargo ships use the Suez Canal every year.(
- Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)
  - 5. Why did people start to use ships?
  - 6. What goods does Egypt export?



30

Step Ahead



(3Ms)

- 1. You (wouldn't mustn't won't will) get lost so easily if you used a map.
- 2. What (will-would-must-is) happen if the Earth's temperature increased?
- 3. The movie was as (exciting more exciting less exciting the most exciting) as I had heard.
- 4. They could win the competition if they (practiced practice practicing would practice) more.
- 5. He is (such as like more) brave as a lion.
- 6. If humans (lived are living live will live) on Mars, what kind of challenges would they face?

# 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

- 1. an early The Ancient Egyptians created ink type of.
- 2. been inside you a planetarium Have ever?
- 3. animals trapped Some get the plastic in.

# Write an email of (70) words to your friend Adel: (5Ms)

Tell him about a book you read about the Ancient Egyptians. Tell him how they were creative and what they invented. Your email address is <a href="mailto:ahmad@gmail.com">ahmad@gmail.com</a> and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:adel@school.net">adel@school.net</a>.

प्रस्का

# Unit (8) Revision



## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### activities - take - independent - part - team

Have you ever been part of a ? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in 2 out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine — it's good to be 3 and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to 4 part. You might learn a lot!

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### check - flight - planned - ideas - notes

Fares had to do a project on the history of ①

. He had to make a poster, but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His friend said it was good to ②

. His teacher told him to try again, to make ③

on what he read and to look in books for more ideas. His mom asked him to try his best and to have a break when he's tired. His dad told him to stop and think and to take time to plan. So Fares asked, he read, and he tried. He ④

his ideas, and his poster was the best!

# 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### leader - oasis - meeting - determined - Scouts



32



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### National - environment - taking - career - collage

I go to an art club after school. I'm ① part in an art show next month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wall ② with two other students.

Next year, I'd like to study more science and learn more about the environment. I'd like to visit the Ras Mohammed ③ Park.

When I'm older, I'd like a ④ that helps the environment. Dad

(5)

### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### allowed - groups - blew - ripped - map

When the Scouts got off the bus, the teacher gave each group a

. He told them they had to go north. The Scouts weren't

to use their phones. The groups set off, using the map
to follow the road. It was very hot, so after a while, Seleem and his group
stopped to have some water. They sat under a tree, but there was suddenly
a strong wind. It 

the map out of Seleem's hands! They ran
after it, but when they caught it, the map

in half.



### Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

### next - doing - vacation - shopping - summer

Yaseen : Are you staying with your grandma?

told me to work hard, so that I could go to university.

Youssef: Yes. My grandma isn't well, so I am doing some ①

for her tomorrow.

Yaseen: What are you doing @ week?

Youssef: I'm excited because I am staying with my cousins next week.

Yaseen: What are you doing on the weekend?

Youssef: I'm preparing for a 3 ....

### Unit 8

Yaseen : Are you going on vacation this 4 ?

Youssef: Yes, and I'm happy because my cousins are going to stay

with me in the summer.

### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. an experiment	- a	science	-	has to	do	-	for	- 0	competition	_	Hazem.
------------------	-----	---------	---	--------	----	---	-----	-----	-------------	---	--------

......

- 2. person Injy independent is an.
- 3. to be need you When determined do?
- 4. both and waved We at smiled her.
- 5. this summer on vacation Are going you?
- ?
- 6. week I'm next my cousins staying with.
- .
- 7. will more enough sleep Getting give you energy.
- 8. are of What you afraid?
- 9. followers and a leader Every team needs.
- 10. try asked to My mom my best me.
- 11. How weekend was the football game last?
- ?
- 12. internet the on some research Do.
- 13. solve his did Fares problem How?
  - ?

- 14. next week competing in a science I'm competition.
- 15. a scientist or an to be like l'd inventor.



### Choose the correct answer: Vecabulary

- 1. If you are (anxious afraid mile, encent), you are happy to do something on your own.
- 2. When you are (afraid determined erman assed), you believe that you will do or finish something.
- 3. When someone is (anxious patient determined), they are worried or nervous about something.
- 4. If you are (afraid anxious patient), you are able to wait calmly for a long time.
- 5. When someone is (determined afraid naependent), they are scared or frightened of something.
- 6. If you are (independent determined embarrassed), you are worried about what other people think, or feeling bad about something you did or said.
- 7. You are a (anxious afraid determined) person. You work hard to find solutions to problems.
- 8. To (pass interest d sar poul) somebody means to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad.
- 9. The phrase in a (raw row crew) means one after the other, in order.
- 10. When someone is (born worn corn) out, they are very tired.
- 11. Everyone in the class (took part took time took an interest) in the school concert. We all participated.
- 12. It's a good idea to (take time take part take an interest) to answer the questions when doing your homework.
- 13. Amina (took turns took an interest took part) in history last summer.
- 14. When we do a class quiz, we (take part take an interest take turns) to answer the questions.

### Unit 8

- 15. When you (make take intake) part in a new sport, you can easily make new friends.
- 16. (Followers Leaders Members) inspire and guide their followers to achieve a common goal.
- 17. (Presidents Followers Leaders) work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders.
- **18.** Subheadings tell the reader about the (photo topic design) of each part of the text.
- 19. You can grow date palms, fruit, and vegetables in a/an (oasis desert mountain) because there's water.
- 20. When the wind (calms stops blows), it moves the leaves and branches of trees.



# P Choose the correct answer: (Present Continuous)

- 1. I'm (flying fly flew) to Paris on Friday.
- 2. They (aren't weren't don't) coming back until the end of the year.
- 3. I'm (give giving gave) a presentation at work next week
- 4. She (is will would) having a party for her birthday next month.
- 5. What (do were are) you doing this weekend?
- 6. They're (starting started start) their new job next Monday.
- 7. The train (was is will) leaving at 8:15, so don't be late.
- 8. He (does was is) having dinner with his friends tonight
- 9. (Are Were Will) you working late tomorrow?
- 10. I'm (stay stayed staying) with my cousins next week.
- 11. Are you (goes going go) on vacation this summer?
- 12. What are you and your friends (did doing do) later today?

# 10 Choose the correct answer: (Reported Speech)

- 1. "(Don't Didn't Doesn't) be sad," my teacher said.
- 2. The teacher told (my I me) to be quiet.



- 3. Ibrahim (says said asked) me to close the window.
- 4. "Can I borrow your pen?" she (told said tells).
- 5. Sarah (asked says said) me if I could help her with her homework.
- 6. She politely (said says asked) if I could pass her the salt.
- 7. "May I have some water, please?" (said says asked) the child politely.
- 8. The manager (told says said) us to turn off the lights when we leave.
- 9. Hesham asked me to (lent lend lends) him some money.
- 10. The librarian (says asked said) everyone to be quiet.
- 11. "Make sure you arrive on time," the teacher (told tells said).

# Choose the correct answer: (enjoy - love - like / would like to)

- 1. I enjoy (swimming swam swim) in the ocean.
- 2. She would (liked likes like) to learn how to play the guitar.
- 3. We enjoy (played play playing) board games on weekends.
- 4. They would like to (go goes went) on a road trip across the country.
- 5. He loves (watched watching watch) movies at the cinema.
- 6. We would like (of to on) try the new restaurant in town.
- 7. She likes (reading read reads) books in her free time.
- 8. We love (traveled travel traveling) to new destinations.
- 9. We would like to (attend attended attends) the concert next month.
- 10. He likes (play playing played) football with his friends.
- 11. We enjoy (watching watch watched) the sunset by the beach.
- 12. He would (like liking liked) to improve his language skills.
- 13. She loves (cooks cooked cooking) delicious meals for her family.
- 14. They enjoy (take takes taking) long walks in the park.
- 15. She would like to (reading read reads) more books this year.
- 16. She enjoys writing poetry and (express expressing expressed) her emotions through words.

37 Connect Plus 6 +



# Unit D Test 4

نص الاستماع موجود آجر الكتاب.



### Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. Fares had to do a project on the (geography language history show) of flight.
- 2. His teacher told him to try again, to make (biographies histories photographs notes) on what he read and to look in books for more ideas.
- 3. His mom asked him to try his best and to have a (break go project try) when he's tired.
- 4. He (mixed planned showed played) his ideas, and his poster was the best!



Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

### determined - competition - anxious - experiment - trying

Youssef is learning how to ride a bike. He has tried four or five times. He really wants to learn. He has decided that he won't stop 1 until he can ride his bike! Youssef is a 2 person. Hazem has to do an 3 for a science competition next week, and he's very worried about it. He wants to get good grades, but he can't sleep or eat. Hazem is 9



### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Last summer, Magdy went on holiday to the seaside. He stayed with his parents in a nice place cose to the sea. Magdy is nineteen. His brother Karam is thirteen. There were mostly young people on the holiday, but there weren't many children there.

They had a wonderful time. They played rackets some of the time with their father. Magdy went swimming a lot. Karam loves swimming too.



38

Step Ahead

They got up early every morning and went for a swim before breakfast. His father did a lot of painting. He is a businessman, but he paints a lot in his free time. The best thing about the holiday was the people. Ahmed made a lot of friends.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Magdy's father paints pictures because it's his (hobby job sport game).
- 2. Magdy is (younger older taller heavier) than his brother.
- 3. The underlined word "close" means (far similar near different).

# Answer these questions:

- 4. What's Magdy's father's job?
- 5. What was the best thing on that holiday?

### The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)

(2Ms)

- A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
  - 1. Tarek was great at writing. (
  - 2. Mrs Basma was enthusiastic and wants to help. ( )
  - 3. See 1 to the second of the
  - 4. Bassant works as a scientist. (
- Read and answer the questions: (2Ms)
  - 5. What was the problem with the team's first video?
  - 6. Who knew a lot about sports in the team?





### Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. We're (had has have having) dinner with my grandparents next weekend.
- They like hiking in the mountains and (explore exploring explores explored) nature.
- 3. Mom (said told says saying) me to go to the store to buy something.
- 4. i'm (help helps helped helping) my little brother with his homework tomorrow.
- 5. Is Youssef visiting his uncle (last week yesterday tomorrow last month)?
- 6. They would like to (volunteer volunteered volunteering) at a local charity.

# 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. you - been - ever - part of - Have - a team?

.....?

- 2. with her was math homework Reem's dad helping her.
- 3. take out bag What of his Asser did?

-7

Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

### "My summer vacation"

### ideas to help you

- ► Where will you go?
- ▶ With whom?
- ➤ What are you going to do?
- ► Who are you going to visit?





40

# Part 2



Revision Tests

### Revision Test



يص الاستماع موجود آذر الكتاب.



### Listen and circle the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. Noha is in Grade (sixteen sixty six sixth).
- 2. Noha is happy to (waste prepare spend share) her ideas in front of the class.
- 3. Noha enjoys working in a (band team staff group).
- 4. Noha enjoys (taking making having doing) part in group activities.

# 2

### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

### parked - place - flight - passports - airport

Fares: Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

Samir: We've been to the 1 to see off my uncle and aunt.

They've flown home to Jordan. The 2 left at 8 am, so

we had to wake up at four o'clock. I'm really tired.

Fares: Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it like?

Samir: Crowded! Dad dropped us off at the front while he 
the car. At first, we couldn't figure out where to go, but Mom found the right place.

Fares: Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and
I will need 4. . Mom will fill in the forms for us.

Samir: You'll pick up some cool American phrases while you're there.



The ancient Egyptian history is very rich. Egypt is full of treasures which are not found anywhere. These treasures are more valuable than jewels, gold and silver other countries may have.

Tourists come from different countries to enjoy seeing the statues, tombs,



pyramids and temples which were built thousands of years ago. They tell us how our grandfathers were great and clever at all sciences.

At that time, other countries lived in darkness. The Ancient Egyptian kings built those tombs and temples to thank gods, and keep their bodies safe. The ancient Egyptian monuments are valuable because they are part of the world's history.

# Choose the correct answer:

- Our grandfathers were (old clever rich lazy).
- 2. The underlined word "their" refers to the (tourists treasures kings gods).
- 3. Tourists come to Egypt from (one two similar different) countries.

# E Answer these questions:

- 4. When were pyramids and temples built?
- 5. Why are the Ancient Egyptian monuments valuable?

### The Reader News Team

(4Ms)

### 4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- 1. Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve. (
- 2. On social media, people always write a lot of words.
- 3. The local magazine in their town heard about what the children were doing.
- 4. The newspaper team's success was good for the school.

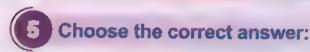
# B Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. What idea did Mrs Basma have for the children?
- 6. What happened later in the year?



### **Revision Tests**



(3Ms)

- 1. When is Youssef (help helping helps to help) to paint a boat?
- 2. My science teacher told me to (worked working works work) hard.
- 3. All the fish will be (killed to kill kills kill) in that polluted water.
- 4. (Laila Laila's Lailas Lailas') aunt is an engineer.
- 5. I'd like to (am be was do) a scientist or an inventor.
- 6. If I (have has having had) a flying car, I would travel all around the world!

# 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

- 1. outside and play Dad me told to go.
- 2. we for look Can ideas online?
- 3. on vacation aren't going We summer this.
- Write an email of (70) words to your friend Khaled: (5Ms)

Tell him what you are doing next week and if you are going anywhere this summer. Your email address is <a href="mailto:saif@yahoo.com">saif@yahoo.com</a> and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:khaled@gmail.com">khaled@gmail.com</a>.



44

Step Ahead

# Revision Test 2



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. Many countries still make electricity using fossil (falls fuels feels fails).
- 2. (Turning Breaking Bringing Burning) fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases
- 3. Greenhouse gases are (nice great bad good) for the environment.
- 4. High levers of (carbon oxygen gas calcium) dioxide and greenhouse gases cause climate change and air pollution.
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

### bacteria - decompose - disease - prevent - Store

Drinking dirty water can cause disease because dirty water has a lot of yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. 

fresh food in a refrigerator, or a cool dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh and it won't start to

Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Rania and Mustafa have traveled to different places in Egypt. They have been to El Fayoum, where they visited Wadi El Rayyon and a famous temple. They have also been to the Red Sea at Hurghada. They enjoyed the beach, the camel rides and the boat trips. They have also been to Luxor and Aswan where they visited the Valley of the Kings and the High Dam They haven't been to the North Coast yet. Perhaps, they will go there next summer.

ीटमा रू

### Revision Tests



### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. They enjoyed the (temple High Dam beach pyramids) in Hurghade.
- 2. Wadi El Rayyan is in (Luxor El Fayoum Hurghada Giza).
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "different" is (far similar near close).

# B Answer these questions:

- 4. Where may Rania and Mustafa go next summer?
- 5. What did they visit in Luxor and Aswan?

### The Reader | The Silk Road

(4Ms)

# A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- 1. Today, it's difficult to buy and sell goods in different parts of the world. (
- 2. In the past, it was safer for traders to travel in caravans.
- 3. The Silk Road was very important for over 2,500 years. ( )
- 4. Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. ( )

# Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. How does the Silk Road have its name?
- 6. Why did travelers in the past use camels?

# Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. Papyrus wasn't (as smooth smooth as smooth as less smooth) the paper we use today.
- 2. Taqwa would (like liking likes liked) to go to the future.
- 3. The wildlife will (is was has be) destroyed if we don't stop pollution.
- 4. There are three books. They're (Gameelas Gameelas' Gameela Gameela's) books.



46

### Revision Tests

- 5. If you (designed designing design) a time machine, where could you go?
- 6. (Do Am Is Are) you staying with your grandma?



### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. go to exhibition an The children interactive.
- 2. the weekend What doing are you on?
- 3. asked Dalia to help with her homework me.

Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A visit to the planetarium"

### Dibloot in Helphon

▶ When did you go? ▶ With whom? ▶ What did you do and see there?



نص الاستماع موجود أحر الكتاب.



### Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

(3Ms)

- 1. Plastic doesn't (compose camp decompose complete), so it stays in the ground for a long time.
- 2. Some plastic can get into the (land ocean desert mountain).
- 3. (Cutlery Curley Cartoon Clay) that you can eat is becoming popular.
- 4. Some (audible bearable readable edible) cutlery comes in different flavors!



```
Revision Tests
         First and Communication to the distance with the words from the box: (4Ms)
                                               1 -1 FO YOUR
    Seleem : Hi, Tarek.
   Tarek : Hi, Seleem. You look happy!
   Seleem: I am! I passed my science test with 72%.
   Tarek : Oh, wow! That's 1 news.
   The second second second second second
                       difficult
   Tarek : Well 2
                                                               ! I'm so 3 . . . . . for you! I didn't pass
                       my science test. I have to do it again.
   5
                                                                         5,0,0,1
                      pass next time
   Tarek: Thanks, Seleem.
          leading low say gleet and answer the questions:
                                                                                                                                        (5Ms)
   1 · 4 · # AJS
                     , 11 '1 GdS
   i ra ra me
  to the second se
   all began to leave the stadium.
                             III una ver:
  1. The game took (one - two - three - four) hours.
  a deposit, y
                                                                rection (+ part finished - left)
```

3.

1. D

2. 1

3.

4. 1

**5.** N

6. N

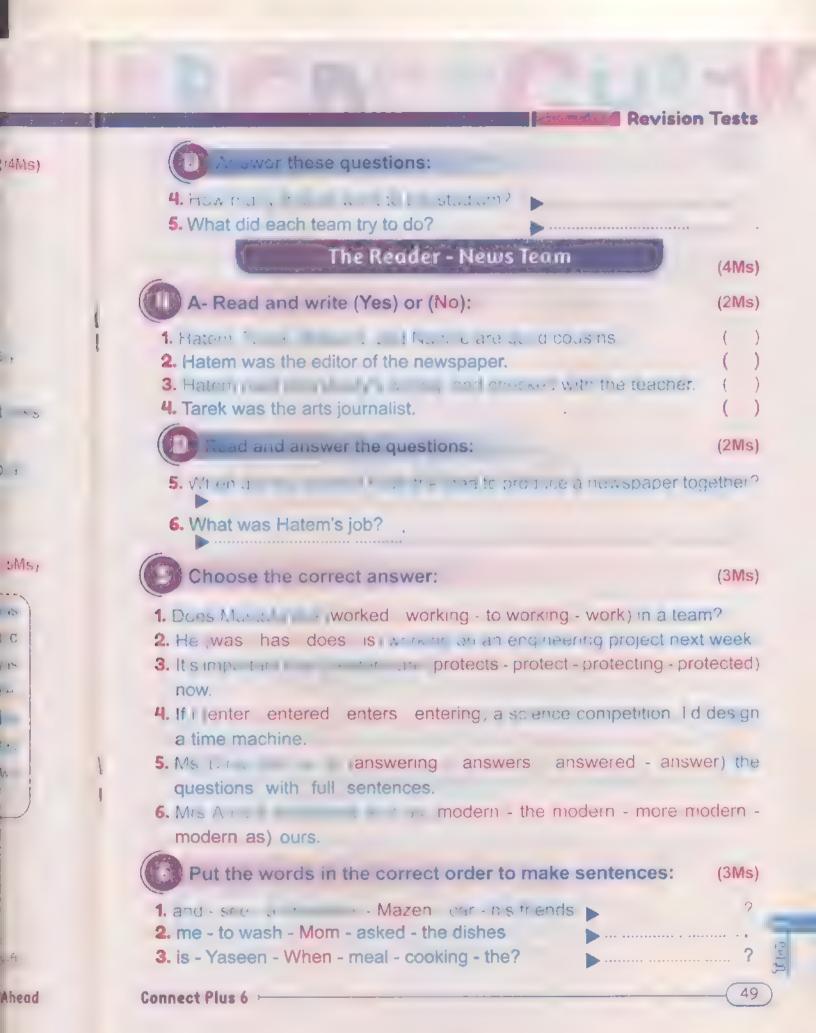
1. ar

2. n

3. is

Conne

- Step Ahead





# Write an email of (70) words to your friend Asmaa:

(5Ms)

Tell her about the visit your class made to the science museum. Tell her what you saw and what you liked best there. Your email address is <a href="mailto:doha@school.net">doha@school.net</a> and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:asmaa@gmail.com">asmaa@gmail.com</a>.

TISTED T COLUMN TO THE TERMINATURE TO BE TO THE TERMINATURE TO THE THE TERMINATURE TO THE

# Revision Test

30

نص الاستماع موجود أحر الكتاب.



# Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. Wael is (embarrassed independent anxious afraid), but he also enjoys working in a team.
- 2. Wael is sociable, and he likes (hurting hunting making leaving) new friends.
- 3. Wael goes to an (art music football science) club after school.
- 4. Wael is working on a big wall (magazine newspaper league collage) with two other students.

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

# instruments - play - presentation - concert - choir

Our school 

was on Saturday. It was amazing! Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music! The concert started at 5 pm. The school director Mrs Mariam gave a 

before it started.





#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

In the past, many of the things we used were made in other countries. We had to pay a lot of money to get them. Now, most of these things are made in Egypt. "Made in Egypt" is now written on almost everything we use from the needle to the rocket. For example, cloth is made in Mahalla. Blankets are made in Kafr El-Sheikh. Cars are made in Helwan. Sweets are made in Tanta. Our factories sell their products to different countries in Africa, Asia and even in Europe.



#### the correct answer:

- 1. The things we got from other countries were (cheap ancient useless expensive).
- 2. (Blankets Sweets Clothes Furn-ure) are made in Kafr El-Sheikh.
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "past" is (ago present old ancient).

# Allswer these questions:

- 4. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
- 5. Where do our factories sell their products?

# The Reader - Transportation today

(4Ms)



## A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- 1. Ships could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road. (
- 2. The Suez Canal was opened in 1896.
- 3. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long. ( )
- 4. The Suez Canal is a very important sea route for businesses. (

# Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. Why was the Suez Canal built?
- 6. What does the Suez Canal connect?





#### Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. Ms Dina (said told tell says) us to do some research and the internet
- 2. Were any of the videos (posted post posts posting) by you?
- 3. If I visited Sharm El-Sheikh on vocation, I (can will would was) swim in the sea.
- 4. One day, (Sameh Samehs Sameh's Sameh is: parn started burning!
- 5. Paper isn't as (as expensive most expensive expensive than expensive) as computers.
- 6. Jumana (stay stayed was staying is staying) with neighboring next week.



## Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

1. visiting - Is - now - Youssef - his - cousins?



-

2. can - The camera - take - the water - photos - under



3. to open - Ms Manal - Rashad - his book - told



Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"The invention of "filter straws""



solve problems - dirty water - remove bacteria - prevert diseases





Total 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. Our school (class lab library concert) was on Saturday.
- 2. Over (six sixty six hundred sixteen) students were in the concert.
- 3. There are 34 students in the (competition opera orchestra contest).
- 4. The (choir bank chair club) has over 30 students from different years. but they all love music!
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

#### packed - flashlight - aid - backpack - desert

Seleen was really excited to take part in the Scouts'

adventure. The day before, he packed his . However, it
was very heavy and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all
that was in it. He . it again, with her help. This time, he only
put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight, a first ikit, and a water pottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a
compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.

# Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

My name is Reem. My favorite hobby is reading. I like reading exciting stories. Last night i read a very interesting story about a man and a woman who were sailing across the Atlantic Ocean. There was a terrible storm and their ship sank. They could see land and they swam towards it. They found themselves on a beautiful island. There were no people there. They could live there alone. They built a hut from trees. They stayed about two months there. While they were sitting by the sea,

They stayed about two months there. While they were sitting by the sea, they saw a ship coming near them. It took them home again.





#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. They stayed about (60 days 10 weeks two years three months) on the island.
- 2. The underlined word "it" refers to the (ship tree storm island).
- 3. Reem's favorite hobby is (writing drawing reading playing).

# (D

#### furnier these questions:

- 4. Why did the ship sink?
- 5. How was the man and the woman rescued?

#### The Reader New Team

(4Ms)

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- 1. Tarek was great at writing.
- 2. Mrs Basma was enthusiastic and wants to help. ( )
- 3. Some children decided to write news reports in French.
- 4. Bassant works as a scientist.



## Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. What was the problem with the team's first video?
- 6. Who knew a tot about sports in the team?



# Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. (Are Does Were Is) the area designed to be safe enough?
- 2. If we (don't wouldn't didn't won't) enter the competition, we wouldn't win a prize!
- 3. Dad asked me (at of in to) put out the garbage.
- 4. What will be (done does to do do) to help the wildlife?
- 5. Spring isn't as (as hot hot as as hotter hottest as) summer.
- 6. I'm sociable, and I like (makes making make to making) new friends.



#### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

1. you - take - your team - turns - Did - in?

2. was - It - place - a peaceful - a river - near.

- 3. a good Cycling travel is way to.



## Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nesma:

(5Ms)

Tell her about the games you enjoyed when you were younger and what you were good at. Your email address is hoda@school.net and your friend's email address is nesma@gmail.com.

# Revision Test

نص الاستماع موجود أحر الكياب.



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. Faisal Al-Mosawi was a (worried frightened talented scared) football player.
- 2. After a car accident he couldn't walk and he had to use a/an (sofa armchair - couch - wheelchair).
- 3. In 2009, he learned scuba (driving diving riding jumping).
- 4. In 2018, he broke the (world country city village) record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes.





# Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

## storm - shade - space - burning - barn

Farmer Sameh had a barn. One day, Sameh s barn started 1 They saved the sheep, but they couldn't save the barn. While Sameh and his wife Amina built a bigger barn with wood, the sheep sat in the 2 of the trees. In the winter, the barn was ready, Later that year, there was a terrible 3 and other farmers came running with their sheep. They asked to put their sheep in the barn. Sameh's new barn was big enough for everyone's sheep. He agreed because there was lots of (4)

#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo People from all over the world and from many parts of Egypt like to visit it. The tower is 185 meters high and was built in 1961. Three electric lifts take visitors up to the top which looks like a large lotus flower. At the top, there's a restaurant which moves round while you have your meal or your drink. From the top of the tower, you can see the Nile, all of Cairo, Giza and Helwan. You can see the Pyramids to the west and Cairo Airport to the east

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. People get to the top of the tower (on foot on the stairs in a winch in a lift).
- 2. The top of the tower looks like a large (lotus papyrus jasmine corn) flower.
- 3. The underlined word "famous" means (unknown popular old ancient).



#### Ca Answer these questions:

4. How old is Cairo Tower?



5. What can people see from the top of the tower?	
The Reader - The Silk Road	(4Ms)
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):	(2Ms)
<ol> <li>Silk was only made in China at first.</li> <li>The Silk Road was important only for buying and selling goods.</li> <li>Constantinople is now known as China.</li> <li>Many towns along the routes became rich.</li> </ol>	( ) ( ) ( )
Read and answer the questions:	(2Ms)
5. Where did the Silk Road start?	
6. What goods did people from Europe sell?	
Choose the correct answer:	(3Ms)
<ol> <li>(Would - Will - Do - Did) you go to Ancient Egypt if you had a time made.</li> <li>My dad told me (not rush - rush - rush not - not to rush).</li> <li>The article (will publish - will be published - publish - be published) newspaperwebsite.</li> <li>If you wanted to meet your friends in the park, you (would - will - can) take your jacket and fly there.</li> <li>Ancient Egyptian inventors were (as clever as - cleverer - as constant of the park).</li> </ol>	on the
<ul> <li>inventors today.</li> <li>I (was cooking - am cooking - cooked - cooks) my parents' favorite tomorrow.</li> </ul>	e meal
Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(3Ms)
1. use - in our - plastic - We - lives - everyday.	
2. did - Ancient - the - What - invent - Egyptians?	?

3. lived - ago - years - of - hundreds - Ahmad Ibn Majid.



Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms) "An amazing adventure"

#### Ideas to help you:

- ► Where did you go?
- ► What skills did you learn?

Was it difficult?

- ▶ What did you like best about the trip?
- ▶ What were the challenges of the trip?

# **Revision Test**



بي الاستماع مو بود الر سال



# Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. Sylvia is an international ( . . doctor journalist teacher).
- 2. Sylvia works for an English ( eaflet newspaper magazine book).
- 3. Sylvia really loves the ( Grimon Arabic English) language.
- 4. Sylvia studied journalism at (..n /ersity school kindergarten nursery).
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

# machine - inventions - designed - history - competition

Reem

machine. I'd love to travel to a different time in @ Nagwa

. where

: That's a great idea. If you designed a time (§)

would you go?

Lara

: Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.

Reem

: If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt! I'd like to

learn how they built the pyramids.

Nagwa: I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine. I'd go

to the future to see what (9) people have!

Lara : Let's make our competition entry about a time machine, then!

if we made a time machine, we could go to so many different

places. I think that idea would win the competition!



#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Computers are probably the most important invention. They are machines which follow programs that tell the computer how to store and control electronic information. A computer can do difficult sums very quickly. Computers are important because they are flexible, accurate and can store lots of information in their memory.

Computers are now used in banks, at homes and in factories. The internet allows people to communicate with anyone in seconds. Most books are now made with the help of computers. Even doctors use computers to help them examine their patients.



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The internet is the fastest means of (transport entertainment electronics communication).
- 2. Computers are (mode n addient old unknown).
- 3. The underlined word "store" means (leave forget keep know).



#### And the Trust questions:

- 4. Why are computers important?
- 5, What do programs tell the computer?



(4NIs)



#### A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

 The Silk Road became less important when people started to transport goods by sea.



as
s)
Is
g) / " n,
s)
Í
7
s)

Total

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



# Listen and circle the correct answer:



(6Ms)

- 1. When I was in (France Morocco England Egypt), my favorite place was Marrakech.
- 2. There was a (shopping traveling studying swimming) pool.
- 3. Moroccans speak French, so I (picked clicked put looked) up a lot of French phrases.
- 4. Morocco is a (bad awful wonderful silly) place!
- 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

#### athletes - leg - record - training - underwater

At the age of 25 Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to the hospital, where the doctors removed part of his . Then, Omar heard about two disabled . Then, Omar heard , and he wanted to be like them. He started a hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world his holding his breath underwater. Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

# (3)

#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Most modern inventions have helped man to lead a happy and comfortable life. However, some of them may make him suffer greatly. Planes, trains, buses and cars all help to carry people from one place to another in a very short time. The television and the radio help people to enjoy and spend their time happily. Telephones help us contact our friends and relatives. In the kitchen, we find the cooker and the fridge which help us cook food and keep it until we need it. The most important invention is the computer which is used in different fields like business, medicine, education and others. The mobile phone appeared and spread only a few years ago. It's of great help to most people, whatever their jobs are.

प्रिट्या १



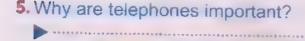
# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The most important invention is the (mobile computer fridge telephone).
- 2. There are (eight a ne ten e even) inventions mentioned in the text.
- 3. The underlined word "comfortable" means (easy difficult hard terrible).



# Answer these questions:

- 4. What means of transport mentioned in the passage?



# The Reader - News Team

(4Ms)



# A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- 1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine became friends at high school. ( )
- Hatem was the sports journalist.

( )

- 3. They had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together when they were in Grade 6.
- 4. Nadine's friend invited her to an art exhibition.
- D

Read and answer the questions:

(2Ms)

- 5. Who was a good leader?
- 6. What did Nadine like to do outside of school?



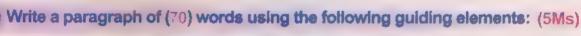
# Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. Yaseen's sisters (am 1s was are) going to the store.
- 2. A journalist will (be sent send sends sent) to investigate the river.
- 3. Toothpaste is as (order oldest the old old) as herbs.
- 4. Mr (Abdullahs Abdullah Abdullahs' Abdullah's) students are doing a test.



- 5. Dad asked (my mine I me) to tidy my room.
- 6. Asser (doesn't wouldn't won't didn't) use a magazine if he wanted to find ideas for a competition.
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)
  - 1. my sister My dad up wakes in the morning at 7 o'clock.
  - 2. of fish the does What type look like camera?
  - 3. like to Would you a sailor be?



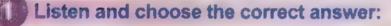
#### "A visit to a famous place"

#### ideas to field your

- ▶ What was that place?
- ► When was the visit?
- ▶ What did you see there?
- ➤ Who went with you?
- ▶ What did you take with you?

# Revision Test 9 ----

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

- 1. Every year we have a garage (seal sole sale sail) at our school.
- (Doctors Volunteers Managers Nerses) from our school all bring in old items.
- 3. The money we collect is used to help children who need health (care career cure car) in hospitals.
- 4. We also buy some new (books bags shoes toys) and take them to the children with our teachers.



# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (4Ms)

# teamwork - half - joined - positions - leader

Omar

: How was the football game last weekend, Seif?

Seif

: It was really good, thanks, Omar.

Omar

: Did you win?

Seif

: Yes, we won the game but it wasn't easy. We were losing in the first ①

. Our captain, Hesham, guided us on how to play the game in the second half. That's why he's a good

. He had a great plan and we all followed it. We won because of good teamwork.

Omar

: That sounds great. You've been happier since you 3

the football team.

Seif

: Yes, I have. When we practice, we take turns to play in different

4

so I've learned a lot. And I've made some good

friends.

Omar

: I'll come and watch your next game.



# Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Everywhere, people play football. Football was very different when people began to play it. All the men of one village played against all the men of another village. The match went on all day.

Today, there are two teams of eleven players. The game <u>lasts</u> for about an hour and a half with a rest in the middle. The teams play matches on grass fields with white lines around the sides. When the ball goes outside the lines, the game stops. There are many rules and there is a referee to make players obey the rules.



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The football team consists of (ten eleven twelve thirteen) players and a goalkeeper.
- 2. The football match lasts for (less than more than exactly similar to) an hour.



Revision Revision	on Tests
3. The underlined word "lasts" means (stops - warks - continues -	finishes).
Answer these questions:	
4. How was football different in the past?	
5. Why is there a referee in a football match?	
The Reader The Silk Boad	(4Ms)
A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):	(2Ms)
1. Traveling on the Silk Road was easy.	( )
2. The Silk Road reached the Mediterranean Sea over time.	( )
3. Silk was a very cheap material.	( )
4. The Silk Road made it impossible for countries to trade goods	and
share ideas	( )
Read and answer the questions:	(2Ms)
5. Where did the Silk Road start?	
6. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous?	
6 Choose the correct answer:	(3Ms)
1. Are you (goes - going - went - go) anywhere this summer?	
2. The beauty of the river will (enjoying - be enjoyed - enjoy - e people again.	njoys) by
3. Villages (don't - wasn't - won't - aren't) as busy as cities.	
4. We're in Miss (Amai - Amais - Amais') class.	
5. The cheetahs are (tracks - tracked - to tracking - track) so they lost.	don't get
6. My mom asked me to (goes - go - went - going) to bed when I v	was tired.
6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(3Ms)
1. Her - finished - homework - be - won't - this evening.	· ARY
2. Egypt - in - Does - living - like - Sylvia?	?
3. up - looking - They - are - route - the - to the beach.	
Connect Plus 6	65

Connect Plus 6 -



# Write an email of (70) words to your friend Farida:

(5Ms)

Tell her about the charity work you do at school, how you help your friends who can't read or write well, and how you help your community. Your email address is <a href="mailto:salma@gmail.com">salma@gmail.com</a>. And your friend's email address is farida@notmail.com.

# Revision Test 10

Total 30

نص الاستماع موجود أخر الكتاب.



# Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to (dive travel swim snorkel) on the sea today.
- 2. He was the first Arab (driver teacher seaman traveler).
- 3. He wrote about routes to different places and the history of (swimming diving sailing traveling).
- 4. His books helped (vets divers sailors swimmers) travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India.



Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

## time - interest - take - part - turns

When you take in a competition with your friends, do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes to speak, and takes to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.



#### Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Louis Braille was born in 1809. When he was three, he went blind after an accident. Although he was blind, he went to the primary school. In 1819, he went to the world's first school for the blind in Paris. In 1821, Braille met Barbier, the inventor of a way to send messages. Braille made Barbier's system patter known by Braille's name and used by nearly all blind people. In 1826, he became the first blind teacher at his school when he was 17. In 1829 he wrote his first book. He died in 1852.



#### licose the correct answer:

- 1. The world's first school for the blind was in (New York London Paris -Rome).
- 2. Braille went blind in (1812 1819 1821 1826).
- 3. The opposite of the underlined word "better" is (worse best worst bad).

# wer these questions:

- 4. What did Braille invent?
- 5. How old was Braille when he died?

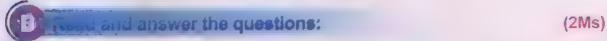
#### The Reader Maxie Tomas

(4Ms)

A-Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(2Ms)

- 1. Tarek was a good leader.
- 2. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper. 3. Bassant organized a beach clean-up.
- 4. The newspaper team made a flyer about Kitty.



- 5. What was the problem with the team's first video?
- 6. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"?

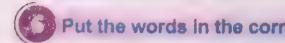


## Choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

39

- 1. Garbage w.ll be (picking picked picks pick) up every day
- 2. My mom asked me (to not to for not for) forget to do my homework.
- 3. (Was Is Does Are) Reem looking after her little brother tomorrow?
- 4. The grant pandas (are puts was put are putting were put) in danger some years ago.
- 5. If I (enter enters entered entering) a science competition, I would design a robot to clean my room.
- 6. Fares s (as funny funny as the funny funny than) as Nadia



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

- 1. the fastest are Cheetahs the world in animals
- 2. d.d and Sameh What animals have his family?
- 3. the Ibn Majid seaman Arab first was.



Write a paragraph of (70) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A story about one of Ibn Majid's sea journeys in the past"

#### Ideas to help you:

start - big ship - sailors - India - compass - find - lost ship - helped - route



68

Step Ahead

Part 3 Listening Scripts



# अ विदेशी हैं कर देवन हैं।



In 2009, Faisal Al-Mosaw learned soubaid ing, and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world. In 2019, he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scubaid ve 13 km in five hours and 24 minutes. He olike a record that was set in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scubaidiver with no disability. Today Faisal continues to scubaidive, and he inspires young people by giving talks. Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.



Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India, Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. They aren't watched all the time but they are tracked, so they don't get lost.



We all know that cycling is a good way to travel, it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows in the dark. These paths are called "glow-in-the-dark bike paths". These paths store solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the paths glow softly. Cyclists can see where they are going in the dark. These paths are safe, and they re good for the environment!



#### Listening



Fares had to do a project of the shad to make a poster but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His friend said it was good to the k. His teacher told him to try adain, to make notes on what he read at the control books to in love beas his monitas reading to try his best and to have a break when he's tired. His dad told him to stop and think and to take the read and he tried. He planned his ideas, and his poster was the best!



My name is Nona and 1 m in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident. I in happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities.



Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels like coal, oit, and gas Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like carbon dioxide and methane. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High evens of carbon dioxide and greenhouse gases cause climate change and air pollution.



Plastic doesn't decompose so it stays in the ground for a long time. Some plastic can then get into the ocean. Lots of people want to find a hetter idea and cutlery that you can eat is becoming popular. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and some edible cutlery comes in different flavors, tool

Norm :

#### Listening



My name is Wael, and I'm in Grade 6. I'm independent, but I also enjoy working in a team. I'm sociable, and I like making new friends. I go to an art club after school. I'm taking part in an art show next month. It's really exciting. I'm working on a big wail collage with two other students.



Our school concert was on Saturday It was amazing! Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical instruments including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The choir has over 30 students from different years, but they ail love music! The concert started at 5 pm.



Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player. However, after a car accident he couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair. He was 20 years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a challenge So in 2009, he learned scuba diving and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world in 2018 he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km in five hours and 24 minutes.



I'm Sy I'm an international journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university





When I was in Morocco, my favorite place was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom woke me up early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I picked up a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi dropped us off at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!



Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means volunteers from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!



Ahmad Ibn Majid was born in 1432 Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. He was the first Arab seaman, and he learned how to navigate the seas. He became a famous navigator and, over the years, he wrote many books. He wrote about routes to different places and the history of salling. His books he ped sa ors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India and East Africa.

The state of the s

# Answer Key







#### Lesson (1)

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) fascinated
- (2) sailors
- (3) seaman
- (4) navigate
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) sailed
- (2) Ocean
- (3) explore
- (4) journey
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- (1) travel
- (2) born
- (3) astronomy
- (4) describing
- Read the text and answer:
- (1) navigator (2) navigate (3) compass
- (4) Ibn Majid wrote 38 books.
- (5) They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India, East Africa, and other places.
- S Put the words in the correct order:
- (1) How did he help sea travelers?
- (2) Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman.
- (3) Why was astronomy important?
- (4) He learned how to navigate the sea.
- (5) What type of books did he write?
- (6) Ibn Majid wanted to explore the seas and oceans.
- (7) Would you like to be a sailor?
- Write a short story:

Once upon a time, there was an amazing adventure! Ibn Majid, a brave sailor, sailed on a big ship with his crew. They wanted to go to India. But oh no! They got lost at sea! Luckily, Ibn Majid had a special compass. It helped the lost ship find the right path to India. It was an exciting journey navigating across the big ocean and exploring new places.

#### Lesson (2)

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) decided
- (2) organized
- (3) filled
- (4) looked

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) stayed
- (2) woke
- (3) picked
- (4) dropped
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) went
- (2) dropped
- (3) figured
- (4) put
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- (1) airport
- (2) saw
- (3) parked
- (4) passports
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
  - (2) up
- (3) off
  - (4) up (5) up
- (6) off (7) out
- (8) away
- (9) off her husband (10) it in
- (11) up the route (12) them away
- O Put the words in the correct order:
- 1 My dad wakes my sister up at 7 o clock in the morning.
- 2. He picked up some German phrases in
- 3. They are looking up the route to the
- 4. I and mom are putting away my clothes
- 7 Write a paragraph:

I went on a visit to a famous place called the Grand Canyon in the USA. My family went with me on this great adventure. We visited it last summer during our vacation. We packed our bags and took some snacks and water with us. When we arrived, we were amazed by the beautiful views. We hiked along the route and took pictures. It was an experience I will never forget

#### Lessons (3-4)

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) environment
- (2) canoe
- (3) challenge
- (4) tent
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) banker
- (2) leg
- (3) athletes
- (4) training
- (5) record
- (6) underwater
- Read and complete the dialogue:
  - (1) accident
- (2) crutch
- (3) record
- (4) dreams

#### **Answer Key**

#### Read the text and answer:

- (1) football (2) 2009(3) slowest
- (4) He couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair.
- (5) Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities

#### S Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- What did Emily like best about her adventure?
- 2- He had a good job as a banker.
- 3- Would you like to go on an adventure?
- 4- Omar had a terrible accident on his motorbike.
- 5- What were the challenges of the trip?
- 6- He wanted to break a world record

#### Write a paragraph:

Omar Hegazy's story is truly inspiring. He was an active person who loved sports but had an accident that left him in a wheelchair. Instead of giving up, he found inspiration from disabled athletes. Omar started swimming and trained hard. In 2022, he broke world records for swimming underwater distances. He even swam across the Agaba Gulf and cycled from Taba to the Egyptian Pyramids! Omar's determination and achievements inspire others with disabilities to follow their dreams

#### Lesson (5)

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) astronaut
- (2) university
- (3) course
- (4) trip

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) fitness
- (2) spacesuits
- (3) spaceship
- (4) sick

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) mission
- (2) attached
- (3) gravity
- (4) floating

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1- chosen
- 2- are taught

- 3- taught

- 4- Is
- 5- are stored 6- are shown
- 7- tested
- 8- are
- 9- cleaned

- 10- is put
- 11- ask
- 12- are asked
- 13- checked 14- attached 15- is heated

- 16- thrown
- 17- are
- 18-asked

#### Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- A new astronaut is taught many things.
- 2- How is the spaceship cleaned?
- 3- Astronauts need to be physically strong.
- 4- Is your suitcase packed for space?
- 5- You should study science at school.
- 6- When are clothes thrown away?

#### Write an email:

From: ehab@yahoo.com

To: fares@gmail.com

Subject: Book Recommendation; Life as an Astronaut

Hi Fares.

I wanted to tell you about a book I read called "Life as an Astronaut." It's really interesting and gives you an idea of what astronauts do in space. The book talks about their training, daily routines, and the challenges they face. I found it fascinating to learn about how they work together as a team and the incredible views they see during spacewalks, I think you might enjoy reading it too! See you soon. Yours.

Enal

#### Lesson (6)

#### Read and complete the text:

- 1- ambitious
- 2- climb
- 3- adventures
- 4- achieve

#### Read and complete the text:

- 1- guide
- 2- trips
- 3- equipment
- 4- mountain

#### Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- What was Alyssa's dad's job?
- 2- She decided to climb Mount Everest
- 3- What did she do when she was 14?
- 4- Alysaa is an amazing young woman.
- 5- What was Alysaa's amazing
- achievement?

#### Write a biography:

One person who really inspires me is Sarah Thompson. She was an amazing athlete, a motivational speaker, and someone who overcame a disability to achieve incredible things. First, Sarah was born in London on April 10, 1990. Even though she had a back injury when she was young, she never gave up. Next, she



became a Paralympic swimmer and won lots of gold medals in the London 2012 Paralympic Games. Then, Sarah used her story to inspire others by giving speeches. After that, she worked for charities to support people with disabilities. Finally, she started her own successful business, helping people with disabilities get the sports equipment they need. Sarah Thompson's story shows that you can do anything if you believe in yourself and work hard.

#### Lesson (7)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- village 3- grew
- 2- fnends
- 4- scenes
- 2 Put the very in the correct order:
- (1) They were good friends.
- (2) Who would you like to travel with?
- (3) He pretentied to be dead.
- (4) What time should we leave?
- (5) They studied at the same school.

#### Write a short story:

There was a boy named Tim who loved adventure. One day, he found a special map at the library. It led him on an exciting journey through jungles and mountains. Tim faced many challenges, but he never gave up. Finally, he discovered a hidden treasure! Along the way, he learned about friendship and the importance of working together. Reading books made Tim feel inspired and gave him a big imagination for his adventures

## 🕟 Unit (5) Test (1)

- Listen and choose:
- 1- fourteen
  3- wheelchair

2- Morocco

4- internet

- Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- world
  - 2- humans
- 3- canoe 4- challenge
- Read the text and answer:
- 1- rockets and spaceships
- 2- strong 👔 3- oxygen
- 4- Yes, I agree with them.
- 5- There is no air or water on the moon.

#### Read and write (Yes) or (No):

- 1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- Yes
- 4- People traded silk between China, in the east, and the countries we now know as Europe, in the west.
- 5- Because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather

#### S Choose the correct answer:

- 1- off 2- prepared
- 3-put away her new book
- 4- are done 5- is watched 6- reading

#### 6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Which world records did Omar Hegazy break?
- 2- Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago.
- 3. Wrist were the challenges of the trip?

#### Write a paragraph:

I went on a cool adventure to the Amazon rainforest. It was tough, but I learned lots of cool things like finding my way through the thick jungle and spotting different animals. It was hard at times, but the best part was seeing all the colorful nature and hearing the unique sounds of the rainforest. The challenges included walking a lot and dealing with the hot and sticky weather, but it was all worth it for the amazing experience.

# Unif (6) Lesson (1)

#### Read and complete the text:

1- sale 2- volunteers 3- equipment 4- care

#### 2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- hutch 2- responsible 3- check
- 4- vaccinations

#### S Read and complete the text:

1- raise 2- decorate 3- community 4- crafts

#### Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- Grades 2- calculations 3- newspaper
- 4- articles

#### 6 Read the text and answer:

- 1- children 2- article
- article 3- editor
- 4- They go twice a week.

#### Answer Key

5- Because there are articles about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too!

## 6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Every year we have a garage sale at our
- 2- Mrs Doaa is married to a vet.
- 3- Would you like to be an editor?
- 4- The children love our school newspaper.
- 5- The editor thought the story was great.

#### Write an email:

From rana@school.net To: dina@hotmail.com Subject: The charity work Hey Dina

I hope this email finds you well. I wanted to share some exciting news with you about the charity work I've been involved in at school. I've been helping my friends, who struggle with reading and writing, by teaching them during our lunch breaks. It's been an amazing feeling to see their progress and confidence grow.

I've also been actively involved in community service projects, like organizing food distribution and volunteering at local shelters. It feels amazing to give back and make a positive impact.

I hope I hear about your own experiences! Take care,

Rana

#### Lesson (2)

# Read and complete the text:

1- were brought

2- are fed

3- are tracked

4- are protected

# Read and complete the text;

1- wasn't protected

2- was cut down

3- were put

4- were given

# Choose the correct answer:

1- are 2- tracked 3- were put 4- was

5- given 6- Is 9- was destroyed

7- protected 8-posted 10- were put

11- are fed

12- aren't watched

## Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Cheetahs are the fastest animals in the world.
- 2- Is the area designed to be safe enough?
- 3- They aren't watched all the time.

- 4- Giant pandas were put in danger.
- 5- It's important that they are protected.

#### Lessons (3-4)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- international 2- stories 3- interviewed 4- editor
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- Oh, no 2- That's too 3- a pity
- Read and complete the dialogue: 1- wow! 2- That's awesome 3- done!
- 4- pleased for you! 5- Better luck next time.

#### Read the text and answer:

1- Egypt 2- university 3- national

4- She decided to focus on English language at school.

5- A journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate weil to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

## 5 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- What can you see in the photos?
- 2- Oh, no! That's too bad!
- 3- Why was Sylvia excited last Monday?
- 4- I'm so pleased for you!
- 5- I studied journalism at university.
- 6- Does Sylvia like living in Egypt?

#### Write a paragraph:

I would love to be a journalist! It would be so exciting to ask people questions and write stories. I could tell everyone about important things happening in the world. I could meet famous people and learn from them. It would be like being a detective, finding out the truth, and sharing it with others. Plus, I love writing and telling stories, so being a journalist would be perfect for me. I think it would be a fun and important job to have.

#### Lesson (5)

#### Read and complete the text:

1- home 2- peaceful 3- walks 4- fishermen

#### Read the text and answer:

1- river 2- photos 3- destroy

4- He sent the reporter to investigate the problem.

5- The river will be cleaned up and the fish will be healthy again

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1- sent 2- destroyed 2 1 24 decome 5- be 6- cleaned 7- feet

8- will be fed

11- will publish

4 Put the words in the correct order

a to be a constant

1- It was a peaceful place near a river

2- I'd ke to be a news reporter

3- Can I work tor you?

4- All the fish will be killed

5- Nadine wrote her notes for her news report

#### Write an email:

From mayar@hotmail.com

To. nadalouschool not Subject: Poliution

Hi Nada.

I hope you're doing well. I reliently read an article about pollution and its my art on the environment, and if G is the tranking about how important statistic like its in Pollution represents a pig threat to our planet harming habitats wild te and even our own health. But we can make a difference timple team or malar ag waste recycling and using a rendy products can help reduce poliction. Let's spread awareness and encourage others to join us in protecting our environment Together, we can create a clear or and healthier world! See you soon, Mayar

#### Lesson (6)

Read and complete the text.

1- awesome 2- decorated 3-races 4- took

Choose the correct answer:

1- Amir's 2- Reems 3 Anais

4- Gameela's 5- Statiation A dullans

Read and complete the text:

1- concert 2- instruments 3 choir

4- presentation

Put the words in the correct order:

1- What type of text is it?Mr. Kamal's class decorated the sports area.

3- I'm so proud of all of you.

4- What does the text describe?

5- Our sports day was amazing!

Write a news report:

An exciting sports competition happened in our community, and it was so much fun! There were different sports, like football, basketball and volleyball. People came to watch and cheer for their favorite teams. The players showed amazing skills and worked together as a team. One person said, "It was fantastic to see how focused and competitive they all were!" The competition brought everyone together and made us feel like a big family. It was an awesome event that showed us

the power of sports to bring people loy and make us feel united

#### Lesson (7)

Read and complete the text:

1- sheep 2- honey 3- barn 4- build

Read and complete the text:

1- burning 2- shade 3- storm 4- space

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- What animals did Sameh and his family

2- Farmer Sameh had a very happy life.

3- They can stay in the shade.

4- Where will you put the sheep?

5- Sameh kept sheep and chickens

## \*\* Unit (6) Test (2)

Listen and choose the north of answer!

1- farm 2- sell 3- sheep 4- beans

2 Read and complete the te-

1- journalist 2- newspaper 3- editor

4- press

3 Read the text and answer:

3- parts 1- information 2- front

4- Because in this way, they learn what is going on in the world.

5- There are news magazines, literary magazines and magazines for special interests such as photography, sports and

Choose the correct answer:

1- were 2- Is 3- sent

#### **Answer Key**

- 4- be sold 5- Laila's 6- used
- Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Do you know the people in this village!
- 2- Reem won first place for her high jump.
- 3- What will be done to help the wildlife?

#### Write an email:

From amgad@yahoo.com

To: yousef@hotmail.com

Subject: Sports day

Hi Yousef,

I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you all about the amazing sports day we had at school. It was so much fun! We played a variety of games, like jumping. football and tug-of-war. Guess what? Our team won the tug-of-war competition! It was such an exciting moment.

The whole day was filled with energy and happiness. Everyone was cheering and supporting their teams. We had friendly competitions and enjoyed cheering for our classmates. It was a fantastic day filled with laughter, teamwork, and healthy competition.

I wish you could have been there to join in the fun. Hopefully, we can have another sports day soon, and you can be a part of rt.

Take care.

Amgad

## Review (3) Test (3)

- Listen and choose the correct answer:
- 1- adventurer
- 2. climbing
- 3. ten
- 4. Mount Everest
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:
- 1- zookeeper
- 2- fed
- 3º inside
- 4- cheetahs
- Read the following text and answer the questions:
- 2- In 3- discovered
- 4- Mom woke her up early so she could visit her uncle.
- 5- At the bus stop
- 4 A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
- 1-No 2- Yes 3- No 4- No
- B- Read and answer the questions:

- 5. In Xi'an, a large, rich city in China.
- 6. Because its routes went through many countries and different types of land, across deserts and mountains.

#### S Choose the correct answer:

- 1- off 2- were
- 3- destroyed
- 4- Omar's 5- are taught
- 6- Will be checked

#### Put the words in the correct order:

- (1) We travel into space in a spaceship.
- (2) Her homework won't be finished this
- (3) What were the challenges of the trip?

#### Write a paragraph:

The most important international news story for me was a great fire in a bank in USA. It was very dangerous and it took my interest. It happened yesterday evening. All the staff were terrified. Luckily, nobody was hurt. The manager's office was burnt. I think they will close the bank for a short time.

# Unit (7)

#### Lesson (1)

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) disease (2) bacteria (3) prevent
- (4) Store (5) decompose
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) planet (2) decompose
- (3) cutlery (4) edible

#### Read the following text:

A: (1) travel (2) solar (3) healthy

- (4) Glow-in-the-dark bike paths
- (5) These paths are safe, and they are good for the environment.

#### Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water.
- 2- Which invention would you like to use?
- 3- Cycling is a good way to travel.
- 4- I love learning about inventions.
- 5- The bacteria can't pass through the
- 6- Which invention is the most important?

#### S Write a paragraph:

Filter straws are a clever invention. They solve the problem of dirty water by removing bacteria, which prevents diseases. With these strong or a water from any source without worrying They're simple yet effective. Filter straws are vital for clean and healthy water

#### Lesson (2)

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) invented (2) would (3) 'd invent
- (5) 'd put on (6) flew (4) wanted
- (7) would take

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) competition (2) history
- (3) machine
- (4) inventions
- (5) time

#### Choose the correct answer:

- (1) entered, would design
- (2) wouldn't, wanted
- (3) Would you, had
- (4) didn't, wouldn't
- (5) stopped, would lose
- (6) entered (7) take 181 COUTH
- (10) made (11) would (9) went
- (12) designed (13) met (14) nvent
- (15) had

#### Put the words in the correct order:

- (1) I think that idea would win the competitionf
- (2) What is a time machine?
- (3) You can work in groups to talk about vour ideas.
- (4) Can we look for ideas online?
- (5) I'd love to travel to a different time in history

#### Lessons (3-4)

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) looks
- (2) sea life (3) feels
- (4) waterproof (5) sounds (6) coral reefs

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) exhibition (2) interactive
- (3) driverless (4) planetarium

#### Read and complete the dialogue:

- (2) driverless (2) control
- (3) underwater
- (4) space

#### Put the words in the correct order:

- (1) The children go to an interactive exhibition.
- (2) Where does the camera take photos?
- (3) Mazen and his friends see a driverless
- (4) The camera can take photos under the water.
- (5) What is Dr Amin's invention?

#### 5 Write an email:

From: hani@gmail.com To: yasser@school.net

Subject: Science Museum Trip

Hev Yasser.

I wanted to tell you about our school trip to the science museum. It was so cool! We saw an exhibition about driverless cars and did a project on it. We had to imagine where we would go if we had a car that could go anywhere. Wael wanted to fly in the sky. Fares wanted to go underwater, but I couldn't decide. Then we went to an interactive exhibition about robots and learned a lot. Finally, we visited the planetarium and saw stars and planets. It was awesome! If I had a driverless flying car, I'd go to space!

Take care.

Hani

#### Lesson (5)

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) inventions
- (2) Egyptians
- (3) existed
- (4) sign

#### Read and complete the text:

- (1) plow
- (2) soil
- (3) pull
- (4) engines

#### S Read and complete the text:

- (1) record
- (2) ink
- (3) communicated (4) papyrus

#### Choose the correct answer:

- (1) isn't
- (2) aren't
- (3) is

- (4) isn't
- (5) weren't (6) is
- (7) weren't (8) is
- (9) as
- (10) as easy as (11) isn't.
- (12) good as
- (13) as (14) easy (16) old
- (15) useful as (17) as clever as
  - (18) important



#### **Answer Key**

- 5 Put the words in the correct order:
- (1) What did the Ancient Egyptians invent?
- (2) They understood how the human body worked.
- (3) Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean.
- (4) Farming was difficult in the past.
- (5) Ancient Egyptian inventors were clever.

#### Lesson (8)

- Read and complete the text
- (1) eat
- (2) trapped
- (3) beaches
- (4) recycled
- 2 Read and complete the text:
- (1) ocean
- (2) effect
- (3) trapped
- (4) environment
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) solution
- (2) problem
- (2) reasons
- (4) chip
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) fuels
- (2) creates
- (3) gases
- (4) climate
- S Punctuate these sentences:
- (1) We saw lots of things at the art exhibition paintings sculptures, murals, and mosaics
- (2) The river was full of plastic pollution: chip packages, water bottles, and food containers.
- (3) There are many forms of renewable energy: wind, solar, wave, and water.
- (4) We can do things to stop plastic pollution: reduce, reuse, and recycle.
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- (5) We use plastic in our everyday lives.
- (6) Plastic can have a very bad effect on sea life.
- (7) The Ocean Net is a special invention
- (8) The Seabin is an interesting solution
- Write about the problem and solution:

#### Problem:

In Kenya, elephants often go into farms and ruin the crops, which causes big problems for the farmers. It also makes people harm elephants.

Solution:

To fix this, one solution is to put beehives in the fields. Elephants are scared of bees, so they will stay away from the farms. This helps keep the crops safe and makes it easier for farmers and elephants to live together peacefully.

#### Lesson (7)

- Read and complete the dialogue:
- (1) creative
- (2) solve
- (3) pots
- (4) idea
- 2 Read the following text:
- A: (1) birdfeeders (2) feed B:
- (3) pushed
- (4) It is difficult for Mr Hamdy to fill his birdfeeders because he hurt his leg.
- (5) Rania took koshari to Mr Hamdy.
- 3 Put the words to make correct sentences:
- (1) What does Rania take to Mr Hamdy to
- (2) Mr Hamdy loved feeding the birds.
- (3) Do you need any help?
- (4) Rania put the rope around the gatepost.
- (5) Why does Rania's mom make koshari?

# - Unit (7) Test (4)

- U Listen and choose:
- 1- Disease
- 2- Bacteria
- 3- Refrigerator
- 4- Prevent
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- inventions
- 2- flying
- 3- dangerous
- 4- jacket
- 3 Read the text and answer:
- 1- light bulb 2- leave 3- rich
- 4- At twelve Edison began to sell newspapers and sweets in trains to get money.
- 5- Edison was asked to leave school because he didn't do his school work.
- 6- His mother taught him the most important things and encouraged him to read a lot about science.
- The Reader:
- A Read and write:
- 1- False 2- True 3- False 4- False
- B- Read and answer:
- 1- When they were in Grade 6.

- 2- Hatem was the editor. He was a good leader, and great at writing. His job was to decide which stories should be their main stories.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:

1-went

2- hot as 3- know

4- as good 5- would 6- as smooth as

**OPut the words in the correct order:** 

- 1- What type of fish does the camera look
- 2- Cycling is good for the environment.
- 3- What is inside the planetarium?

Write a paragraph:

I went to the Science Museum with my family. We saw cool exhibits about space, did experiments, and watched a planetarium show. It was amazing to learn about the universe and explore fun activities. The planetarium show was the best part, where we saw the beauty of space. It was a fun and educational visit that left us inspired by science.



- Read and complete the text:
- (1) homework

(2) explained

(3) understood

(4) patient

- 2 Read and complete the text:
- (1) anxious (2) presentations
- (3) practice (4) advice
- 3 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- When do you try and be patient?
- 2- Youssef is learning how to ride a bike.
- 3- Are you an independent person?
- 4- Injy is making some cakes for a charity.
- 5- When do you sometimes feel anxious?
- 6- Morn and I were walking down the street.

Write a paragraph:

A poor boy lived in a tiny village. He studied hard and was patient. He wanted to be independent. He worked, learned, and saved money. Over time, he started a small business. It grew bigger and bigger. He became a rich businessman. He was successful because he was determined.

#### LE 350.1 (2

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) busy

(2) store

- (3) meal
- (4) surprise
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) shopping

(2) staving

(3) boat

(4) vacation

3 Complete the text:

- (1) is staying
- (2) is leaving
- (3) are going
- (4) are visiting
- (5) are having
- (6) is packing
- Choose the correct answer:
- (1) Is
- (2) are
- (3) isn't

- (4) are
- (5) Are
- (6) making (9) going
- (7) coming (8) visiting (10) next
  - (11) staying
- (12) tomorrow
- (13) helping

- (14) am cooking
- (15) are staving
- S Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- When is Yaseen cooking the meal?
- 2- We aren't going on vacation this
- 3- What are you doing on the weekend?
- 4- Is Youssef visiting his cousins now?
- S Write an email:

From: hani@yahoo.com

To: ehab@gmail.com

Subject: Next Week and Summer Plans

Hi Ehab.

Next week I'm helping my parents and painting with my cousins. It's going to be busyl This summer, I'm staying home, not going on vacation. We can hang out in the city. What are you doing? Take care.

Hani

# Le. Su . L ( U-4)

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) part (2) turns (3) time (4) interest
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- (1) had a test
  - (2) was sick
- (3) give a presentation
- (4) start a school newspaper
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- (1) half

(2) leader

- (3) joined
- (4) positions

- Put the words in the correct order:
- (1) Do you prefer talking or listening?
- (2) Some people like working on their own,
- (3) Being part of a team is great.
- (4) A team of people has more ideas than one person.
- (5) Did you take turns in your team?

## Write a paragraph:

Teamwork makes us stronger together When we join a team, we make new friends and share new ideas. It teaches us the importance of taking turns to speak and to isten Good teamwork like in a football game, requires us to work with others and understand our strengths and weaknesses It's a great part of growing and succeeding

### Lesson (5)

### Choose the correct answer:

- (1) to (2) try (4) him
  - (3) me (5) told (6) said
- (7) read (8) to (10) help (11) not to
- (9) said (12) said
- (13) to
  - (14) told (15) go
- (16) not to rush
- (17) use
- (18) answer (19) told
- (20) put

## Read the following text:

- A- Choose the correct answer:
- (1) poster (2) friend - (3) arranged
- B- Answer these questions:
- (4) hares had to do a project on the history of flight.
- (5) The teacher asked Fares to try again, to make notes on what he read, and to look in books for more ideas.

# Put the words in the correct order:

- (1) Dad told me to go outside and play.
- (2) Dalia asked me to help with her homework.
- (3) Mom asked me to wash the dishes.
- (4) Ms Manal told Rashad to open his book

## Write an email:

From: sama@school.net To: nahla@hotmail.com

Subject: My Solar System Project

Hi Nahla,

I just finished a school project on the solar

system. I had to make a 3D model of the planets. My dad helped me plan it out, and my friend Ali helped with the painting. In the end, it turned out great, and got an A! Take care.

#### Sama

### Lesson (6)

## Read and complete the text:

- (1) competition (2) design
- (3) museum
- (4) scientist

## Read and complete the text:

- (1) hard
- (2) ideas
- (3) team
- (4) activities

### Read and complete the text:

- (1) independent (2) sociable
- (3) club
- (4) collage

### Choose the correct answer:

- (1) visit
  - (2) working (3) to visit
- (4) taking
- (5) work
- (6) like (9) making
- (7) studying (8) be
- (10) to study (11) working ,12 to 10

## Put the words in the correct order;

- (1) What subjects ones Noha like?
- (2) Lenjoy taking part in group activities
- (3) Does she like working in a team?
- (4) We're designing a new robot.

# 6 Write your personal statement:

Hello, I'm Layla from Egypt. My favorite subjects are science, where I enjoy experiments, and history, where I learn about the past. Hove playing basketball with my friends and reading books. In the future, I want to be an engineer because I like building and fixing things. I am working hard at school to make this happen someday.

Thank you for reading about me and my dreams!

## Lesson (7)

## Read and complete the text:

- (1) desert
- (2) backpack

## (3) packed

(4) aid

## Read and complete the text:

- (1) adventure
- (2) pasis
- (3) picnic
- (4) set

### 3 Put the words to make correct sentences:

(6) Samir asked Asser for his compass.

(7) When did Seleem pack his backpack?

(8) The Scouts knew where to go.

(9) Why did Seleem's group win a prize?

(10) Seleem was determined to win.

## Unit (8) Test (5)

### Listen and choose:

1- talk 2- turns 3- change 4- interest

## Read and complete the dialogue:

1- follower

2- success

3- common

4- team

# Read the following text and answer:

1- Science 2- Local 3- Seven

4- Exercises and games help us grow strong and keep us fit.

5- We learn Arabic to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us.

### The Reader:

### A - Read and write:

1- True 2- False 3- True 4- True

B- Read and answer:

5- She suggested putting their written stories and their videos on the school website.

6- Later in the year, it did get easier for the newspaper team. They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website.

### S Choose the correct answer:

1-not to keep 4- working

2- am 5- asked 3- try

## 6Put the words in the correct order:

1- My science teacher told me to work

2- What are you doing on the weekend?

3- Jumana isn't going to school next week.

## Write an email:

From: manal@hotmail.com To: jana@yahoo.com Subject My Study Plan for Finals Hi Jana.

I hope you're doing well! I'm getting ready for my final exams by creating a study plan. Each day, I study a different subject. For hard topics, I ask my big sister for help. She's great at explaining things clearly. How's your prep going? See you soon! Manal

## Review (4) Test (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 .excited 2. history and math 3. two

4. money

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 inventions 2 medicine 3, pain 4 mint

## 3 Read the following text and answer:

1- summer 2- driverless cars 3- safe

4- He'd feet anxious.

5- He is going to spend his vacation in Hurghada.

### A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1. No 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. Yes

### B- Read and answer the questions:

It was a bit unclear!

6. At the local deaf club.

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

1- designed 2- as tall as 3- wouldn't have

4- Is 5- to prepare 6- to

### 6 Put the words in the correct order;

1- What invention cleans dirty water?

2- We're going to the park tomorrow.

3- A filter straw can stop diseases

### Write an email of (70) words to your friend Nadine:

From: nesma@yahoo.com

To: nadine@gmail.com

Subject: My next summer vacation Dear Nadine

I'm very happy to write to you. I'm going to go to the Red Sea for summer vacation, I'll go with my family. We're going to dive and snorkel. We will take photographs and enjoy eating delicious fish. I hope you will join us. You'll not regret it. Yours.

Nesma





# Revision entinis

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) Astronomy
- (2) winds
- (3) navigator
- (4) compass
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) travel
- (2) woke
- (3) picked
- (4) dropped
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) athlete
- (2) along
- (3) crutch
- (4) break
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) ski
- (2) inspired
- (3) across
- (4) salled
- S Read and complete the text:
  - (1) clean
- (2) gravity
- (3) spaceship (4) astronauts
- Read and complete the text:
  - (1) reef
- (2) away
- (3) shadow
- (4) frightening
- Read and complete the dialogue:
  - (1) wheelchair (2) challenge
  - (3) diving
- (4) set
- 8 Put the words in the correct order:
- (1) Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman.
- (2) How many books did Ibn Majid write?
- (3) I went on a walking trip in Spain.
- (4) What language did you pick up?
- (5) You'll pick up some American phrases.
- (6) Which world records did Omar Hegazy break?
- (7) Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man.
- (8) He had a good job as a banker.
- (9) Who saw you off at the airport?
- (10) He completed the swim in eight hours!
- (11) How did he help sea travelers?
- (12) Ehab gives talks to inspire others.
- (13) Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player.
- (14) Would you like to be an astronaut?
- (15) Astronauts need to be physically strong.

- (16) How do astronauts keep fit in space?
- (17) Their sleeping bags are attached to a
- (18) What were the challenges of the trip?
- (19) Astronauts are tested by doctors for their fitness.
- (20) How is the spaceship cleaned?
- Ochoose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)
- (1) navigator
- (2) Astronomy
- (3) sallors
- (4) peninsula
- (5) fascinated
- (6) sea
- (7) explore
- (8) intelligent (10) walk
- (9) Fins
- (12) hold
- (11) inspires
- (14) do
- (13) talented ...
- (16) tidy
- (15) give
- (18) sailed
- (17) ambitious
- (20) whispered
- (19) chatting
- (21) broke
- (22) follow
- (II) Choose the correct answer: (Phrasal Verbs)
  - (1) filling in
- (2) looked up
- (3) wakes me up (4) dropped off
- (5) put away (7) figured out
- (6) picked up (8) see off
- (9) in
- (10) off
- (11) out
- (12) off (14) away
- (13) up
- (16) flaured
- (15) up (17) picks
- (18) put
- Choose the correct answer: (Present Simple [passive])
- (1) taught
- (2) tested
- (3) attached
- (4) chosen
- (5) teaching
- (6) is
- (7) is cleaned (9) fixed
  - (8) written
- (11) are sold
- (10) is baked (12) delivers
- (14) cleaned
- (13) delivered
- (15) cleans
- (16) takes
- (17) are taken
- (18) Are
- (19) reviewed
- (20) ls
- Listen and circle:
- (1) diving
- (2) record
- (3) set
- (4) inspires

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) seaman
- (2) Navigate
- (3) fascinated
- (4) sailors
- Read the text and answer:
- (1) traveled
- (2) 1325
- (3) six
- (4) Because he was ionely.
- (5) Sixty-four years.
- The Reader
- A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
- (1) Yes
- (2) No
- (3) No
- (4) Yes
- B. Answer the following questions:
- (5) In Xi'an in China.
- (6) Horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and items made from glass.
- Choose the correct answer:
- (1) watered (2) up
- (3) returned (4) up (5) away
  - (6) answered
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1. Matthieu wrote a book about his adventures.
- When they got closer, the deer ran
- Ibn Majid wanted to explore the seas and oceans.
- 7 Write an email:

From: hosam@hotmail.com To: basim@school.net

Subject: A visit to a famous place

Dear Basim.

How are you? I'm writing to tell you about my visit to a famous place yesterday. I went to visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. I went with my family. We took our snacks and camera with us. The views were amazing. We took many photos with tourists there. What about you? Did you visit any famous place before? Yours.

Hosam

# Revision on Unit

### Read and complete the text:

- (1) director
- (2) prizes
- (3) proud
- (4) sports

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) Grades (2) do
- (3) calculations (4) articles
- 3 Read and complete the text:
- (1) journalist (2) meetings
- (3) press (4) get
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) journalists (2) breaking
- (3) reports (4) editor
- S Read and complete the text:
- (2) protect
- (3) investigate (4) cleaned
- Read and complete the text:
- (1) sold
- (2) decorated
- (3) instruments (4) choir
- 7 Read and complete the dialogue:
- (1) Well done
- (2) awesome
- (3) skills
- (4) luck
- (5) challenges
- B Put the words in the correct order:
- 1. Newspapers are made on a printing
- 2. Every year, we have a garage sale at our school.
- 3. He lives in a small house called a hutch.
- 4. Does your class like to raise money for local charities?
- 5. They are tracked so they don't get lost.
- 6. Is the area designed to be safe enough?
- 7. The cheetahs aren't watched all the
- 8. Who doesn't love a giant panda?
- 9. I'm visiting my grandparents that weekend.
- 10. As you can see, my job is very interesting.
- 11. Hove my job because Hove sport.
- 12. Were any of the videos posted by you?
- 13. No, I won't be able to come.
- 14. It was a peaceful place near a river.
- 15. I'm so proud of all of you.
- Ohoose the correct answer:
- (1) volunteer
- (2) Equipment
- (3) newspaper
- (4) editor
- (5) hutch
- (6) responsible
- (7) vaccination
- (8) International
- (9) Breaking news (10) journalism

(11) sociable

(13) investigate

(12) staff

(15) barn

(14) promise

(17) summer

(16) fall (18) keeps

# Choose the correct answer:

(1) are written

(2) organized

(3) washing

(4) washed

(5) sent

(6) liked -

(7) was prepared (8) prepared (9) be watched

(10) were sent

(11) painted

(12) will be decorated

(13) were put

(14) Were (16) built

(15) was destroyed (17) was sold

(18) solved

(19) finished (21) solved

(20) were (22) will be built

(23) finished

(24) Will

(25) sent (27) brother's

(26) be washed (28) teacher's

(29) sister's

(30) student's

## Listen and circle:

(1) disappeared

(2) brought

(3) pleased

(4) tracked

# Read and complete the dialogue:

(1) fantastic

(2) invite

(3) pity

(4) bad

## Read the text and answer:

(1) there is no air

(2) Plants

(3) space cities

(4) In space.

(5) Life in the future will be different from present-day life.

## The Reader

# A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

(1)No (3)Yes

(2) No (4) Yes

### B. Read and answer the questions:

(6) She liked doing paintings and pottery outside of school.

# Choose the correct answer:

(1) is

(2) was written

(3) will (5) finished

(4) is eaten (6) Ali's

# 6 Put the words in the correct order:

1. Cheetahs are the fastest animals in the world.

- 2. Why did travelers use camels in the past?
- 3. People didn't protect the habitats of pandas.

## 7 Write a paragraph:

We had a sports day at our school. We played football, volleyball, basketball, and did running and jumping. It was a fun day of sports and working together. We planned the activities and everyone participated. We enjoyed playing different games and had a great time.

### Revision on Unit.



# Read and complete the text:

1- encourage 2- safe 3- lights 4- paths

# Read and complete the text:

1- problems

2- filter

3- bacteria

4- prevented

## Read and complete the text:

1- birdfeeders 2- gatepost 3- knot

4- birdseed

# Read and complete the text:

1- teeth 2- toothpaste 3- mint 4- good

# 5 Read and complete the text:

1- fit 2- environment 3- paths 4- Cyclists

# 6 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- competition 2- magazines 3- machine

4- Ancient

# Put the words in the correct order:

1- Wael asked his teacher to help him.

2- Mrs Hala told him to read page 48.

3- Mom told Tarek to put away his bike. 4- Hani asked me to close the door.

5- Filter straws have prevented diseases in many countries.

6- I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.

7- What is the interactive exhibition about?

8- I wonder what a time machine would look like.

9- What type of fish does the camera look

10- Where does Mazen decide to go?

11- Driverless cars don't need a driver to control them.

- 12- We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today.
- 13- What is the school project about?
- 14- They've existed for thousands of years.
- 15- They understood how the human body worked.
- 16- A plow was used to dig and turn the soil.
- 17- The Ancient Egyptians used animals to help them.
- 18- What is Mr Hamdy using to help him walk?
- 8 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- edible 2- filter 3- decompose
- 4- prevent 5- decompose 6- dirty
- 7- stores 8- driverless 9- Interactive
- 10- planets 11- direct 12- mixed
- 13- pain 14- toothpaste 15- Plastic
- 16- creative 17- healthy 18- cover
- 9 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- went / we'd visit 2- would / were
- 3- wouldn't / they had
- 4- we stopped / wouldn't
- 5- would learn / could learn
- 6- would / could 7- would 8- lived
- 9- would 10- found 11- wouldn't
- 12- attended 13- hadn't 14- would
- 15- could 16- wouldn't 17- Would
- 18- asked 19- could 20- helped 21- would
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- as 2- as 3- fast 4- as funny as 5- experienced 6- isn't 7- as delicious as
- 8- as 9- high 10- cute
- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
- 1- cycling 2- glows 3- solar 4- cyclists
- 2 Read and complete the text:
- 1- fossil 2- greenhouse 3- climate 4- tiles
- 3 Read the text and answer:
- 1- harmful 2- breathe 3- useful
- 4- Pollution represents a significant threat to our planet, harming habitats, wildlife,
- and even our own health.
- 5- Simple steps like reducing waste, recycling, and using eco-friendly products can help reduce pollution.
- 1 The Reader

- A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):
- 1- Yes 2- No 3- No 4-Yes
- B- Answer the following questions:
- 5-As ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo. 6- Cotton, rice, and onions.
- 6 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- wouldn't 2- would 3- exciting
- 4- practiced 5- as 6- lived
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- The Ancient Egyptians created an early type of ink.
- 2- Have you ever been inside a planetarium?
- 3- Some animals get trapped in the plastic.
- 7 Write an email:

From: ahmad@gmail.com

To: adel@school.net

Subject: A book I read about the Ancient Egyptians

Hi Adel,

Ahmad

I need to tell you about book I read about the Ancient Egyptians. We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention! For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked and used herbs to stop pain and diseases. Talk to you soon,

# Revision on Unit

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- team 2- activities 3- independent 4- take
- 2 Read and complete the text:
- 1- flight 2- check 3- notes 4- planned
- 3 Read and complete the text:
- 1- oasis 2- Scouts 3- leader 4- determined

## Read and complete the text:

1- taking 2- collage 3- National 4- career

## SRead and complete the text:

1- map 2- allowed 3- blew 4- ripped

## 6 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- shopping 2- next 3- vacation 4- summer

# Put the words in the correct order:

1- Hazem has to do an experiment for a science competition.

2- Injy is an independent person.

3- When do you need to be determined?

4- We both smiled and waved at her.

5- Are you going on vacation this summer?

6- I'm staying with my cousins next week.

7- Getting enough sleep will give you more energy.

8- What are you afraid of

9- Every team needs a leader and followers.

10- My mom asked me to try my best.

11- How was the football game last weekend?

12- Do some research on the internet.

13- How did Fares solve his problems

14- I'm competing in a science competition next week.

15- I'd like to be a scientist or an inventor.

# 8 Choose the correct answer:

1- independent 2- determined 3- anxious

4- patient 5- afraid 6- embarrassed

7- determined 8- disappoint 9- row

10- worn 11- took part 12- take time 13- took an interest 14- take turns

15- take 16- Leaders 17- Followers

18- topic 19- oasis \* 20- blows

# 9 Choose the correct answer:

1- flying 2- aren't 3- giving 4- is 5- are 6- starting 7- is 8- is 9- Are

10- staying 11- going 12- doing

## 10 Choose the correct answer:

1- Don't 2- me 3- asked 4- said

5- asked 6- asked 7- said 8- told

9- lend 10- asked 11- said

# Choose the correct answer:

1- swimming 2- like 3- playing 4- go 5- watching 6- to 7- reading 8- traveling 9- attend 10- playing 11- watching 12- like 13- cooking 14- taking 15- read 16- expressing

### Unit (8) Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- history 2- notes 3- break 4- planned

### 2 Read and complete the text:

1- trying 2- determined 3- experiment

4- anxious

### Read the text and answer:

1- hobby 2- older 3- near

4- He is a businessman.

5- The best thing about the holiday was the people.

### The Reader

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1-No 2- Yes 3- No 4- No

**B- Answer the following questions:** 

5- It was a bit unclear.

6- Tarek

### S Choose the correct answer:

1- having 2- exploring 3- told

4- helping 5- tomorrow 6- volunteer

## 6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Have you ever been part of a team?

2- Reem's dad was helping her with her math homework.

3- What did Asser take out of his bag?

## Write a paragraph:

"My summer vacation"

I'm so excited about my summer vacation!
I'm going to Alexandria with my family.
We'll have a great time! I can't wait to play
and swim in the sea. We'll also play fun
games on the sandy beach. At night, we'll
have nice movie nights together while
eating popcorn. And guess what? We're
going to visit the amazing Citadel of
Qaitbay and explore the fascinating Library
of Alexandria. It's going to be an awesome
holiday with my loved ones, and we will
make unforgettable memories!



### Revision Test [1]

- Listen and circle the correct answer:
- 1- six 2- share 3- team 4- taking
- 2 Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- airport 2- flight 3- parked 4- passports
- Read the text and answer:
- 1- clever 2- kings 3- different
- 4- They were built thousands of years ago.
- 5- Because they are part of the world's history
- **1** The Reader
- A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
- 1- Yes 2- No 3- Yes 4- Yes
- B- Read and answer the questions:
- 5- To put the articles and the videos on the school website.
- 6- They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website.
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- helping 2- work 3- killed
- 4- Laila's 5- be 6- had
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Dad told me to go outside and play.
- 2- Can we look for ideas online?
- 3- We aren't going on vacation this summer.
- Write an email:

From: saif@yahoo.com To: khaled@gmail.com

Subject: My plans for next week and the

summer

Dear Khaled

I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my plans for next week and the summer. Guess what? Next week, I'm going to visit my grandparents. We'll have so much fun together! We'll play games, go to the park, and have ice cream. As for the summer, my family and I are going to the beach! I can't wait to build sandcastles, swim in the ocean, and eat delicious seafood. It's going to be an amazing time! I

can't wait to hear about your summer plans, too.
See you soon!
Saif

### Revision Test (2)

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
- 1- fuels 2- Burning 3- bad 4- carbon
- 2 Read and complete the text:
- 1- bacteria 2- prevent 3- Store
- 4- decompose
- 3 Read the text and answer:
- 1- beach 2- El Fayoum 3- similar
- 4- They may go to the North Coast.
- 5- They visited the Valley of the Kings and the High Dam
- The Reader
- A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
- 1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- Yes
- B- Read and answer the questions:
- 5- Because people traded silk between China in the past and countries we now know as Europe, in the west.
- 6- Because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- as smooth as 2- like 3- be
- 4- Gameela's 5- designed 6- Are
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- The children go to an interactive exhibition.
- 2- What are you doing on the weekend?
- 3- Dalia asked me to help with her homework
- Write a paragraph:

"A visit to the planetarium"

Last weekend, I went to the planetarium with my family, and it was so cool! We learned a lot about space and the planets. We saw a big screen where they showed us the stars, galaxies, and even the astronauts in space. It felt like we were floating among the stars! We also learned about the different planets in our solar system. My favorite part was seeing the huge model of the moon. It was an amazing experience, and I can't wait to go back again!

### Revision Test (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer: 1-decompose 2- ocean 3- Cutlery 4- edible
- Read and complete the dialogue:
  1- awesome 2- done 3- pleased 4- Better
- 3 Read the text and answer:
- 1- two 2- interesting 3- finished
- 4- Four friends.
- 5- Each team tried to cross the other goal line with the ball.
- 1 The Reader
- A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
- 1- No 2- Yes 3-No 4-No
- B- Read and answer the questions:
- 5- When they were in Grade 6.
- 6- Hatem was the editor.
- S Choose the correct answer:
- 1- working 2- is 3- protected
- 4- entered 5- answer 6- modern as
- 1 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Mazen and his friends see a driverless car.
- 2- Mom asked me to wash the dishes.
- 3- When is Yaseen cooking the meal?

## Write an email:

From: doha@school.net
To: asmaa@gmail.com

Subject: The visit my class made to the science museum

Hello Asmaa,

I hope you're doing great! I wanted to share all the excitement about our class visit to the science museum. It was incredible! We saw so many cool things there. We explored interactive exhibits about dinosaurs, space, and even robots. I loved the planetarium show where we learned about the stars and galaxies. It was so much fun! I can't wait to tell you more about it when we meet.

Take care, Doha

### Revision Test (4)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- independent 2- making 3- art 4- collage

## Read and complete the text:

- 1- concert 2- instruments 3- choir
- 4- presentation
- Read the text and answer:
- 1- expensive 2- Blankets 3- present
- 4- Many of the things we used in the past.
- 5- Our factories sell their products to different countries in Africa, Asia and even in Europe.
- The Reader
- A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
- 1- Yes 2- No 3- Yes 4- Yes
- B- Read and answer the questions:
- 5- It was built to make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea.
- 6- It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez.
- S Choose the correct answer:
- 1- told 2- posted 3- would
- 4- Sameh's 5- expensive 6- is staying
- 1 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Is Youssef visiting his cousins now!
- 2- The camera can take photos under the water.
- 3- Ms Manal told Rashad to open his book.
- Write a paragraph:

"The invention of "filter straws""

There is an amazing invention called "filter straws"! These special straws are made to solve a big problem: dirty water! The filter straws are magical because they can remove bacteria and make the water clean and safe to drink. With these straws, people can prevent diseases and stay healthy. It is like having a superhero in your pocket! Everyone loves filter straws because they make a big difference in people's lives. It is helping people all around the world have access to clean water.

## Revision Test (5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer:
- 1- concert 2- sixty 3- orchestra 4- choir
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- desert 2- backpack 3- packed 4- aid

### Read the text and answer:

- 1- 60 days 2- island 3- reading
- 4- Because there was a terrible storm.
- 5- While they were sitting by the sea, they saw a ship coming near them. It took them home again.

### The Reader

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No 2- Yes 3- No 4- No

B- Read and answer the questions:

5- It was a bit unclear. 6- Tarek

### S Choose the correct answer:

1- Is 2-

2- didn't 3- to

4- done 5- hot as 6- making

### 6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Did you take turns in your team!
- 2- It was a peaceful place near a river.
- 3- Cycling is a good way to travel.

### Write an email:

From: hoda@school.net

To: nesma@gmail.com

Subject: Remembering the fun games of childhood!

### Dear Nesma

I hope you're doing well! I wanted to share some memories of the games I used to enjoy when I was younger. One of my favorites was hide-and-seek. I was really good at finding the best hiding spots! I also loved playing tag and racing my friends in the park. Oh, and let's not forget about the board games. Those were so much fun! What games did you enjoy when you were younger? I can't wait to hear your stories! Best regards.

Nesma

### Revision Test (6)

### U Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- talented 2- wheelchair 3- diving 4- world
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- burning 2- shade 3- storm 4- space
- 3 Read the text and answer: .
- 1- in a lift 2- lotus 3- popular
  4- It is 63 years old. 5- They can see the Nile, all of Cairo, Giza and Helwan.

- The Reader
- A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):
- 1- Yes 2- No 3- No 4- Yes
- B- Read and answer the questions:
- 5- It started from Xi'an, a large, rich city in China.
- 6- Horses, wool, silver, olive oil and items made from glass.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- Would 2- not to rush 3- will be published
- 4- would 5- as clever as 6- am cooking
- 1 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- We use plastic in our everyday lives.
- 2- What did the Ancient Egyptians invent?
- 3- Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago.
- Write a paragraph:

"An amazing adventure",

Last summer, my family and I went on an amazing adventure to the mountains! We hiked through beautiful trails and climbed to the top of a mountain. It was challenging, but I learned so many skills, like determination and teamwork. Some parts were difficult, especially when we had to climb steep rocks, but we encouraged each other and made it through. My favorite part was reaching the top and seeing the incredible view. The biggest challenge was staying safe and making sure we had enough food and water. It was a wonderful experience that I'll never forget!

#### Revision Test (7)

- Listen and circle the correct answer:
- 1- journalist 2- newspaper 3- English
- 4- university
- 2 Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- competition 2- history 3- machine
- 4- inventions
- Read the text and answer:
- 1- communication 2- modern 3- keep
- 4- Computers are important because they are flexible, accurate and can store lots of information in their memory.
- 5- Programs tell the computer how to store and control electronic information.

1 The Reader

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- Yes 2- No 3- No 4- Yes

B- Read and answer the questions:

5- Because ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicle and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo.

6- Cotton, rice, and onions.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- useful as 2- are staying 3- was 4- destroyed 5- said 6- invented

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area.

2- Why does Rania's mom make koshari?

3- Mom and I are putting away my clothes.

Write an email:

From: reem@gmail.com
To: dina@vahoo.com

Subject: The dangers of pollution and how we can make a difference!

Hi Dina

I hope this email finds you weil! I recently read an article about pollution, and it was shocking. Pollution is really dangerous for our environment! It harms plants, animals, and even us. But we can make a difference! We can reduce pollution by recycling, using less plastic, and saving energy. Planting trees and participating in clean-up activities can help too. It's important for us to spread awareness and encourage others to join in. Together, we can protect our planet and create a cleaner, healthier world for everyone! See you soon,

Revision Test (8)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- Morocco 2- swimming 3- picked

4- wonderful

2 Read and complete the text:

1- leg 2- athletes 3- training 4- record

3 Read the text and answer:

1- computer 2- eleven 3- easy

4- Planes, trains, buses and cars.

5- Telephones help us contact our friends and relatives.

1 The Reader

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No 2- No 3- Yes 4- Yes

B- Read and answer the questions:

5- Hatem

6- She liked doing paintings and pottery outside of school.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- are 2- be sent 3- old

4- Abdullah's 5- me 6- wouldn't

O Put the words in the correct order:

1- My dad wakes my sister up at 7 o'clock in the morning.

2- What type of fish does the camera look like?

3- Would you like to be a sailor?

Write a paragraph:

"A visit to a famous place"

Last month, I went on a fantastic visit to Luxor Temple! My family and I went together, and it was so much fun. We packed our backpacks for the trip. We went by train. When we arrived, I was amazed by the beauty of the temple. The massive statues and tail columns were amazing. Inside, we saw beautiful symbols on the walls and learned about the Ancient Egyptian gods. It felt like going back in time! It was an unforgettable experience, and I can't wait to visit more historical places in the future.

Revision Test (9)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- sale 2- Volunteers 3- care 4- toys

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- half 2- leader 3- joined 4- positions

3 Read the text and answer:

1- ten 2- more than 3- continues

4- Football was very different when people began to play it. All the men of one village played against all the men of another village. The match went on all day.

5- To make players obey the rules.

### 1 The Reader

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

1- No 2- No 3- No 4- No

### B- Read and answer the questions:

5- It started from Xl'an, a large, rich city in China.
6- Because people sometimes tried to steal money or goods.

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

1- going 2- be enjoyed 3- aren't 4- Amai's 5- tracked 6- go

### 6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Her homework won't be finished this evening.

2- Does Sylvia like living in Egypt?

3- They are looking up the route to the beach.

## 7 Write an email:

From: salma@gmail.com

To: farida@hotmail.com

Subject: Making a difference through

charity work! Hi Farida,

I hope you're doing great! I-wanted to tell you all about the charity work we're doing at school. It's so amazing! I volunteer to help my friends who struggle with reading and writing. We practice together, and I help them improve. It feels really good to see their progress! We also do community service projects like cleaning up the park and donating clothes to those in need. It's important to help others and make a positive impact. I'm proud to be part of such a caring and giving community! Take care, and let's make a difference together!

### Revision Test (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- travel 2- seaman 3- sailing 4- sailors

Read and complete the text:
1- part 2- turns 3- time 4- interest

### 3 Read the text and answer:

1- Paris 2- 1812 3- worse

4- He invented a way of reading for blind people.

5- He was 43 years old.

## 1 The Reader

A- Read and write (Yes) or (No):

- No 2- Yes 3- Yes 4- Yes

### B- Read and answer the questions:

5- It was a bit unclear.

6- In the local deaf club.

### 5 Choose the correct answer:

1- picked 2- not to 3- Is

4- were put 5- entered 6- as funny

### 6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Cheetahs are the fastest animals in the world.

2- What animals did Sameh and his family have?

3- Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman.

## Write a paragraph:

"A story about one of Ibn Majid's sea journeys in the past"

Once upon a time, there was a famous sallor named Ibn Majid. He set off on a great sea journey on a big ship with his brave sailors. They sailed towards India. During the voyage, they encountered a storm that caused them to lose their way. But Ibn Majid had a special compass that helped him navigate. With its guidance, they found a lost ship and rescued its crew. Ibn Majid's knowledge of the sea and his compass helped them all find their way back on the right route. They returned home pleased, their hearts filled with pride and gratitude for their courageous journey.